**3GPP TSG-RAN WG2 NR Ad hoc 0118 *R2-18xxxx***

**Vancouver, Canada, 22nd January – 26th January 2018**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| *CR-Form-v11.2* | | | | | | | | |
| **CHANGE REQUEST** | | | | | | | | |
|  | | | | | | | | |
|  | **38.331** | **CR** | **CRNum** | **rev** | **-** | **Current version:** | **1.0.1** |  |
|  | | | | | | | | |
| *For* [***HE******LP***](http://www.3gpp.org/3G_Specs/CRs.htm#_blank)*on using this form: comprehensive instructions can be found at* [*http://www.3gpp.org/Change-Requests*](http://www.3gpp.org/Change-Requests)*.* | | | | | | | | |
|  | | | | | | | | |

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***Proposed change affects:*** | UICC apps |  | ME | **X** | Radio Access Network | **X** | Core Network |  |

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | |
| ***Title:*** | Minor corrections ASN.1 review 1 | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  | | | | | | | | | |
| ***Source to WG:*** | Rapporteur (Ericsson) | | | | | | | | | |
| ***Source to TSG:*** | R2 | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  | | | | | | | | | |
| ***Work item code:*** | NR\_newRAT-Core | | | | |  | | ***Date:*** | | 2018-01-05 |
|  |  | | | |  | | |  | |  |
| ***Category:*** | **F** |  | | | | | | ***Release:*** | | Rel-15 |
|  | *Use one of the following categories:* ***F*** *(correction)* ***A*** *(mirror corresponding to a change in an earlier release)* ***B*** *(addition of feature),* ***C*** *(functional modification of feature)* ***D*** *(editorial modification)*  Detailed explanations of the above categories can be found in 3GPP [TR 21.900](http://www.3gpp.org/ftp/Specs/html-info/21900.htm). | | | | | | | | *Use one of the following releases: Rel-8 (Release 8) Rel-9 (Release 9) Rel-10 (Release 10) Rel-11 (Release 11) Rel-12 (Release 12) Rel-13 (Release 13) Rel-14 (Release 14) Rel-15 (Release 15) Rel-16 (Release 16)* | |
|  |  | | | | | | | | | |
| ***Reason for change:*** | | Minor corrections (Class 1) identified during ASN.1 review 1 | | | | | | | | |
|  | |  | | | | | | | | |
| ***Summary of change:*** | | To be completed.  Corrections proposed by:  ZTE  DoCoMo  Huawei  Ericsson  Intel  Oppo  LG  Fujitsu  Samsung  Qualcomm  Vivo  Added fields to support extension to messages not yet including this (MeasurementReport, ReconfigurationComplete, SIB1)  Guidance for CR editors:   1. To avoid change marks for language formatting (typically happens when many users edit the same doc), please do the following word setting:   Review panel => Language => Set proofing languge => Detect automatically => OFF   1. Set the “User name” to indicate the company name. 2. When storing the CR in 3GPP folder, companies should add their Company ID (one letter) to the file name (see RIL). | | | | | | | | |
|  | |  | | | | | | | | |
| ***Consequences if not approved:*** | |  | | | | | | | | |
|  | |  | | | | | | | | |
| ***Clauses affected:*** | |  | | | | | | | | |
|  | |  | | | | | | | | |
|  | | **Y** | **N** |  | | |  | | | |
| ***Other specs*** | |  |  | Other core specifications | | | TS/TR ... CR ... | | | |
| ***affected:*** | |  |  | Test specifications | | | TS/TR ... CR ... | | | |
| ***(show related CRs)*** | |  |  | O&M Specifications | | | TS/TR ... CR ... | | | |
|  | |  | | | | | | | | |
| ***Other comments:*** | |  | | | | | | | | |

3GPP TS 38.331 V1.0.1 (2017-12)

Technical Specification

3rd Generation Partnership Project

Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network

NR

Radio Resource Control (RRC)

Protocol specification

(Release 15)

** 

The present document has been developed within the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP TM) and may be further elaborated for the purposes of 3GPP..  
The present document has not been subject to any approval process by the 3GPPOrganizational Partners and shall not be implemented.  
This Specification is provided for future development work within 3GPPonly. The Organizational Partners accept no liability for any use of this Specification.  
Specifications and Reports for implementation of the 3GPP TM system should be obtained via the 3GPP Organizational Partners' Publications Offices.

Keywords

***3GPP***

Postal address

3GPP support office address

650 Route des Lucioles - Sophia Antipolis

Valbonne - FRANCE

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Internet

http://www.3gpp.org

***Copyright Notification***

No part may be reproduced except as authorized by written permission.  
The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© 2017, 3GPP Organizational Partners (ARIB, ATIS, CCSA, ETSI, TSDSI, TTA, TTC).

All rights reserved.

UMTS™ is a Trade Mark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its members

3GPP™ is a Trade Mark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the 3GPP Organizational Partners  
LTE™ is a Trade Mark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the 3GPP Organizational Partners

GSM® and the GSM logo are registered and owned by the GSM Association

Contents

Foreword 8

1 Scope 9

2 References 9

3 Definitions, symbols and abbreviations 10

3.1 Definitions 10

3.2 Abbreviations 10

4 General 11

4.1 Introduction 11

4.2 Architecture 12

4.2.1 UE states and state transitions including inter RAT 12

4.2.2 Signalling radio bearers 14

4.3 Services 14

4.3.1 Services provided to upper layers 14

4.3.2 Services expected from lower layers 14

4.4 Functions 14

5 Procedures 15

5.1 General 15

5.1.1 Introduction 15

5.1.2 General requirements 16

5.2 System information 16

5.2.1 Introduction 16

5.2.2 System information acquisition 17

5.2.2.1 General UE requirements 17

5.2.2.2 SI validity and need to (re)-acquire SI 17

5.2.2.2.1 SI validity 17

5.2.2.2.2 SI change indication and PWS notification 18

5.2.2.3 Acquisition of System Information 18

5.2.2.3.1 Acquisition of MIB and SIB1 18

5.2.2.3.2 Acquisition of an SI message 19

5.2.2.3.3 Request for on demand system information 19

5.2.2.4 Actions upon receipt of SI message 20

5.2.2.4.1 Actions upon reception of the MasterInformationBlock 20

5.2.2.4.2 Actions upon reception of the SystemInformationBlockType1 20

5.2.2.4.3 Actions upon reception of SystemInformationBlockTypeX 21

5.2.2.5 Essential system information missing 21

5.3 Connection control 21

5.3.1 Introduction 21

5.3.2 Paging 21

5.3.3 RRC connection establishment 21

5.3.4 Initial security activation 21

5.3.5 RRC reconfiguration 22

5.3.5.1 General 22

5.3.5.2 Initiation 22

5.3.5.3 Reception of an *RRCReconfiguration* by the UE 22

5.3.5.4 Secondary cell group release 24

5.3.5.5 Cell Group configuration 24

5.3.5.5.1 General 24

5.3.5.5.2 Reconfiguration with sync 25

5.3.5.5.3 RLC bearer release 26

5.3.5.5.4 RLC bearer addition/modification 26

5.3.5.5.5 MAC entity configuration 27

5.3.5.5.6 RLF Timers & Constants configuration 27

5.3.5.5.7 SpCell Configuration 27

5.3.5.5.8 SCell Release 27

5.3.5.5.9 SCell Addition/Modification 27

5.3.5.6 Radio Bearer configuration 27

5.3.5.6.1 General 27

5.3.5.6.2 SRB release 28

5.3.5.6.3 SRB addition/ modification 28

5.3.5.6.4 DRB release 29

5.3.5.6.5 DRB addition/ modification 29

5.3.5.7 Full configuration 30

5.3.5.8 Security key update 32

5.3.5.9 Reconfiguration failure 32

5.3.5.9.1 Integrity check failure 32

5.3.5.9.2 Inability to comply with RRCReconfiguration 32

5.3.5.9.3 T304 expiry (Reconfiguration with sync Failure) 33

5.3.6 Counter check 33

5.3.7 RRC connection re-establishment 33

5.3.8 RRC connection release 33

5.3.9 RRC connection release requested by upper layers 33

5.3.10 Radio resource configuration 33

5.3.11 Radio link failure related actions 33

5.3.11.1 Detection of physical layer problems in RRC\_CONNECTED 33

5.3.11.2 Recovery of physical layer problems 34

5.3.11.3 Detection of radio link failure 34

5.3.12 UE actions upon leaving RRC\_CONNECTED 35

5.3.13 UE actions upon PUCCH/SRS release request 35

5.4 Inter-RAT mobility 35

5.5 Measurements 35

5.5.1 Introduction 35

5.5.2 Measurement configuration 37

5.5.2.1 General 37

5.5.2.2 Measurement identity removal 38

5.5.2.3 Measurement identity addition/ modification 38

5.5.2.4 Measurement object removal 38

5.5.2.5 Measurement object addition/ modification 39

5.5.2.6 Reporting configuration removal 40

5.5.2.7 Reporting configuration addition/ modification 40

5.5.2.8 Quantity configuration 41

5.5.2.9 Measurement gap configuration 41

5.5.2.10 Reference signal measurement timing configuration 41

5.5.3 Performing measurements 41

5.5.3.1 General 41

5.5.3.2 Layer 3 filtering 43

5.5.3.3 Derivation of measurement results 43

5.5.4 Measurement report triggering 44

5.5.4.1 General 44

5.5.4.2 Event A1 (Serving becomes better than threshold) 46

5.5.4.3 Event A2 (Serving becomes worse than threshold) 46

5.5.4.4 Event A3 (Neighbour becomes offset better than PCell/ PSCell) 47

5.5.4.5 Event A4 (Neighbour becomes better than threshold) 48

5.5.4.6 Event A5 (PCell/ PSCell becomes worse than threshold1 and neighbour becomes better than threshold2) 48

5.5.4.7 Event A6 (Neighbour becomes offset better than SCell) 49

5.5.5 Measurement reporting 50

5.5.5.1 General 50

5.5.5.2 Reporting of beam measurement information 52

5.6 UE capabilities 52

5.6.1 UE capability transfer 52

5.6.1.1 General 52

5.6.1.3 Reception of the *UECapabilityEnquiry* by the UE 52

5.6.1.4 Compilation of band combinations supported by the UE 52

5.6.1.5 Compilation of baseband processing combinations supported by the UE 53

5.7 Other 53

5.7.1 DL information transfer 53

5.7.2 UL information transfer 53

5.7.3 SCG failure information 53

5.7.3.1 General 53

5.7.3.2 Initiation 54

5.7.3.3 Failure type determination 54

5.7.3.4 Setting the contents of *FailureReportSCG-ToOtherRAT* 55

6 Protocol data units, formats and parameters (ASN.1) 56

6.1 General 56

6.1.1 Introduction 56

6.1.2 Need codes for optional downlink fields 56

6.2 RRC messages 57

6.2.1 General message structure 57

*–* *NR-RRC-Definitions* 57

*–* *BCCH-BCH-Message* 58

*–* *DL-DCCH-Message* 58

*–* *UL-DCCH-Message* 59

6.2.2 Message definitions 59

– *MIB* 59

– *MeasurementReport* 60

– *RRCReconfiguration* 61

*–* *RRCReconfigurationComplete* 62

– *SIB1* 63

6.3 RRC information elements 65

– SetupRelease Information Element 65

6.3.1 System information blocks 65

6.3.2 Radio resource control information elements 65

– Alpha 65

– *DRB-Identity* 65

– *BWP-Config* 66

– *CellGroupConfig* 68

– *CellIndexList* 70

– *ControlResourceIndex* 70

– *CrossCarrierSchedulingConfig* 70

– *CSI-MeasConfig* 71

*–* *FailureReportSCG-ToOtherRAT* 82

– FrequencyInfoDL 83

– *FrequencyInfoUL* 84

– *LogicalChannelConfig* 84

– *MAC-CellGroupConfig* 86

– *MeasConfig* 91

– *MeasId* 92

– *MeasIdToAddModList* 93

*–* *MeasObjectEUTRA* 93

*–* *MeasObjectId* 93

*–* *MeasObjectNR* 94

– *MeasObjectToAddModList* 99

– *MeasResults* 100

– *PDCCH-Config* 103

– *PDCP-Config* 108

– *PDSCH-Config* 111

– *PhysCellId* 116

– *PRB-Id* 117

– *PUCCH-Config* 117

– *PUSCH-Config* 122

*–* *Q-OffsetRange* 128

– *QuantityConfig* 128

– *RACH-ConfigCommon* 129

– *RACH-ConfigDedicated* 132

– *RadioBearerConfig* 133

– *ReportConfigId* 134

– *ReportConfigNR* 135

– *ReportConfigToAddModList* 138

– *RLC-Config* 139

– *RLF-TimersAndConstants* 141

– *RNTI-Value* 142

– *SCellIndex* 142

– *SchedulingRequest-Config* 142

– *SchedulingRequestResource-Config* 143

– *ScramblingId* 144

– *SDAP-Config* 144

– *SecurityAlgorithmConfig* 145

– *ServCellIndex* 146

– *ServingCellConfigCommon* 146

– *ServingCellConfigDedicated* 148

– *SRB-Identity* 150

– *SPS-Config* 150

– *SRS-Config* 152

– *SSB-Index* 156

– *SubcarrierSpacing* 157

– *TDD-UL-DL-Config* 157

6.3.3 UE capability information elements 158

*–* *BandCombinationList* 158

*–* *RAT-Type* 159

*–* *UE-CapabilityRAT-ContainerList* 159

*–* *UE-MRDC-Capability* 160

*–* *UE-NR-Capability* 161

6.3.4 Other information elements 163

6.4 RRC multiplicity and type constraint values 163

– Multiplicity and type constraint definitions 163

7 Variables and constants 166

7.1 Timers 166

7.1.1 Timers (Informative) 166

7.1.2 Timer handling 166

7.2 Counters 166

7.3 Constants 166

7.4 UE variables 167

– *VarMeasConfig* 167

– *VarMeasReportList* 167

8 Protocol data unit abstract syntax 169

8.1 General 169

8.2 Structure of encoded RRC messages 169

8.3 Basic production 169

8.4 Extension 170

8.5 Padding 170

9 Specified and default radio configurations 170

9.1 Specified configurations 170

9.2 Default radio configurations 171

9.2.1 SRB configurations 171

9.2.1.1 SRB1/SRB1S 171

9.2.1.2 SRB2/SRB2S 171

9.2.1.3 SRB3 171

9.2.2 SRB configurations 172

9.2.2.1 SRB1/SRB1S 172

9.2.2.2 SRB2/SRB2S 172

9.2.2.3 SRB3 172

10 Generic error handling 172

10.1 General 172

10.2 ASN.1 violation or encoding error 173

10.3 Field set to a not comprehended value 173

10.4 Mandatory field missing 173

10.5 Not comprehended field 174

11 Radio information related interactions between network nodes 176

11.1 General 176

11.2 Inter-node RRC messages 176

11.2.1 General 176

11.2.2 Message definitions 176

– *HandoverCommand* 176

– *HandoverPreparationInformation* 177

– *SCG-Config* 179

– *SCG-ConfigInfo* 180

11.3 Inter-node RRC information element definitions 182

– *CandidateCellInfoList* 182

11.4 Inter-node RRC multiplicity and type constraint values 183

12 Processing delay requirements for RRC procedures 184

Annex A (informative): Guidelines, mainly on use of ASN.1 184

A.3.8 Guidelines on use of parameterised SetupRelease type 195

*–* *ParentIE-WithEM* 203

*–* *ChildIE1-WithoutEM* 204

*–* *ChildIE2-WithoutEM* 205

A.6 Guidelines regarding use of need codes 206

Annex <X> (informative): Change history 207

# Foreword

This Technical Specification has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

x the first digit:

1 presented to TSG for information;

2 presented to TSG for approval;

3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.

y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.

z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

# 1 Scope

The present document specifies the Radio Resource Control protocol for the radio interface between UE and NG-RAN.

The scope of the present document also includes:

- the radio related information transported in a transparent container between source gNB and target gNB upon inter gNB handover;

- the radio related information transported in a transparent container between a source or target gNB and another system upon inter RAT handover.

- the radio related information transported in a transparent container between a source eNB and target gNB during E-UTRA-NR Dual Connectivity.

# 2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non‑specific.

- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.

- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies. In the case of a reference to a 3GPP document (including a GSM document), a non-specific reference implicitly refers to the latest version of that document *in the same Release as the present document*.

[1] 3GPP TR 21.905: "Vocabulary for 3GPP Specifications".

[2] 3GPP TS 38.300: "NR; Overall description; Stage 2".

[3] 3GPP TS 38.321: "NR; Medium Access Control (MAC); Protocol specification".

[4] 3GPP TS 38.322: "NR; Radio Link Control (RLC) protocol specification".

[5] 3GPP TS 38.323: "NR; Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP) protocol specification".

[6] ITU-T Recommendation X.680 (07/2002) "Information Technology - Abstract Syntax Notation One (ASN.1): Specification of basic notation" (Same as the ISO/IEC International Standard 8824-1).

[7] ITU-T Recommendation X.681 (07/2002) "Information Technology - Abstract Syntax Notation One (ASN.1): Information object specification" (Same as the ISO/IEC International Standard 8824-2).

[8] ITU-T Recommendation X.691 (07/2002) "Information technology - ASN.1 encoding rules: Specification of Packed Encoding Rules (PER)" (Same as the ISO/IEC International Standard 8825-2).

[9] 3GPP TS 38.215: "NR; Physical layer measurements".

[10] 3GPP TS 36.331: "Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access (E-UTRA) Radio Resource Control (RRC); Protocol Specification".

[11] 3GPP TS 33.501: "Security Architecture and Procedures for 5G System".

[12] 3GPP TS 38.104: “NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception”.

# 3 Definitions, symbols and abbreviations

## 3.1 Definitions

For the purposes of the present document, the terms and definitions given in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1] and the following apply. A term defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same term, if any, in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1].

**Field:** The individual contents of an information element are referred as fields.

**Floor:** Mathematical function used to 'round down' i.e. to the nearest integer having a lower or equal value.

**Information element:** A structural element containing a single or multiple fields is referred as information element.

**RLC bearer configuration:** The lower layer part of the radio bearer configuration comprising the RLC and logical channel configurations.

**Special Cell:** For Dual Connectivity operation the term Special Cell refers to the PCell of the MCG or the PSCell of the SCG, otherwise the term Special Cell refers to the PCell.

**SRB1S:** The SCG part of MCG split SRB1 for EN-DC.

**SRB2S:** The SCG part of MCG split SRB2 for EN-DC.

## 3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the abbreviations given in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1] and the following apply. An abbreviation defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same abbreviation, if any, in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1].

ACK Acknowledgement

AM Acknowledged Mode

ARQ Automatic Repeat Request

AS Access Stratum

ASN.1 Abstract Syntax Notation One

BLER Block Error Rate

BWP Bandwidth Part

CCCH Common Control Channel

CD-SSB Cell Defining – SSB

CMAS Commercial Mobile Alert Service

CP Control Plane

C-RNTI Cell RNTI

DCCH Dedicated Control Channel

DL Downlink

DRB (user) Data Radio Bearer

DRX Discontinuous Reception

DTCH Dedicated Traffic Channel

EHPLMN Equivalent Home Public Land Mobile Network

EPC Evolved Packet Core

EPS Evolved Packet System

ETWS Earthquake and Tsunami Warning System

E-UTRA Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access

E-UTRAN Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access Network

FDD Frequency Division Duplex

FFS For Further Study

GERAN GSM/EDGE Radio Access Network

GNSS Global Navigation Satellite System

GSM Global System for Mobile Communications

HARQ Hybrid Automatic Repeat Request

IE Information element

IMEI International Mobile Equipment Identity

IMSI International Mobile Subscriber Identity

kB Kilobyte (1000 bytes)

L1 Layer 1

L2 Layer 2

L3 Layer 3

MAC Medium Access Control

MCG Master Cell Group

MIB Master Information Block

N/A Not Applicable

NGC Next Generation Core Network

PCell Primary Cell

PDCP Packet Data Convergence Protocol

PDU Protocol Data Unit

PLMN Public Land Mobile Network

PSCell Primary Secondary Cell

PTAG Primary Timing Advance Group

QoS Quality of Service

RAN Radio Access Network

RAT Radio Access Technology

RLC Radio Link Control

RNTI Radio Network Temporary Identifier

ROHC RObust Header Compression

RPLMN Registered Public Land Mobile Network

RRC Radio Resource Control

SCell Secondary Cell

SCG Secondary Cell Group

SFTD SFN and Frame Timing Difference

SI System Information

SIB System Information Block

SpCell Special Cell

SRB Signalling Radio Bearer

SSB SS Block

STAG Secondary Timing Advance Group

S-TMSI SAE Temporary Mobile Station Identifier

TM Transparent Mode

UE User Equipment

UICC Universal Integrated Circuit Card

UL Uplink

UM Unacknowledged Mode

UP User Plane

UTC Coordinated Universal Time

UTRAN Universal Terrestrial Radio Access Network

In the ASN.1, lower case may be used for some (parts) of the above abbreviations e.g. c-RNTI.

# 4 General

## 4.1 Introduction

This specification is organised as follows:

- sub-clause 4.2 describes the RRC protocol model;

- sub-clause 4.3 specifies the services provided to upper layers as well as the services expected from lower layers;

- sub-clause 4.4 lists the RRC functions;

- clause 5 specifies RRC procedures, including UE state transitions;

- clause 6 specifies the RRC messages in ASN.1 and description;

- clause 7 specifies the variables (including protocol timers and constants) and counters to be used by the UE;

- clause 8 specifies the encoding of the RRC messages;

- clause 9 specifies the specified and default radio configurations;

- clause 10 specifies generic error handling;

- clause 11 specifies the RRC messages transferred across network nodes;

- clause 12 specifies the UE capability related constraints and performance requirements.

## 4.2 Architecture

Editor's note The state model is still a subject for discussion.FFS

### 4.2.1 UE states and state transitions including inter RAT

Editor’s Note: For EN\_DC, only RRC\_CONNECTED is applicable.

A UE is either in RRC\_CONNECTED state or in RRC\_INACTIVE state when an RRC connection has been established. If this is not the case, i.e. no RRC connection is established, the UE is in RRC\_IDLE state. The RRC states can further be characterised as follows:

**- RRC\_IDLE**:

- A UE specific DRX may be configured by upper layers;

- UE controlled mobility based on network configuration;

- The UE:

- Monitors a Paging channel;

- Performs neighbouring cell measurements and cell (re-)selection;

- Acquires system information.

**- RRC\_INACTIVE**:

- A UE specific DRX may be configured by upper layers or by RRC layer;

- UE controlled mobility based on network configuration;

- The UE stores the AS context;

- The UE:

- Monitors a Paging channel;

- Performs neighbouring cell measurements and cell (re-)selection;

- Performs RAN-based notification area updates when moving outside the RAN-based notification area;

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether a RAN-based notification area is always configured or not.

Editor’s Note: FFS UE behavior if it is decided that a RAN-based notification area is not always configured.

- Acquires system information.

**- RRC\_CONNECTED:**

- The UE stores the AS context.

- Transfer of unicast data to/from UE.

- At lower layers, the UE may be configured with a UE specific DRX.

- For UEs supporting CA, use of one or more SCells, aggregated with the SpCell, for increased bandwidth;

- For UEs supporting DC, use of one SCG, aggregated with the MCG, for increased bandwidth;

- Network controlled mobility, i.e. handover within NR and to/from E-UTRAN.

- The UE:

- Monitors a Paging channel;

- Monitors control channels associated with the shared data channel to determine if data is scheduled for it;

- Provides channel quality and feedback information;

- Performs neighbouring cell measurements and measurement reporting;

- Acquires system information.

Figure 4.2.1-1 illustrates an overview of UE RRC state machine and state transitions in NR. A UE has only one RRC state in NR at one time.

****

Figure 4.2.1-1: UE state machine and state transitions in NR

Figure 4.2.1-2 illustrates an overview of UE state machine and state transitions in NR as well as the mobility procedures supported between NR/NGC and E-UTRAN/EPC.

****

Figure 4.2.1-2: UE state machine and state transitions between NR/NGC and E-UTRAN/EPC

The UE state machine, state transition and mobility procedures between NR/NGC and E-UTRA/NGC is FFS.

### 4.2.2 Signalling radio bearers

## 4.3 Services

### 4.3.1 Services provided to upper layers

The RRC protocol offers the following services to upper layers:

- Broadcast of common control information;

- Notification of UEs in RRC\_IDLE, e.g. about a terminating call [FFS, for ETWS, for CMAS];

- Transfer of dedicated control information, i.e. information for one specific UE.

### 4.3.2 Services expected from lower layers

In brief, the following are the main services that RRC expects from lower layers:

- PDCP: integrity protection, ciphering and in-sequence delivery of information without duplication [FFS if duplication need to be listed];

- RLC: reliable transfer of information, without introducing duplicates and with support for segmentation.

## 4.4 Functions

The RRC protocol includes the following main functions:

- Broadcast of system information:

- Including NAS common information;

- Information applicable for UEs in RRC\_IDLE and RRC\_INACTIVE, e.g. cell (re-)selection parameters, neighbouring cell information and information (also) applicable for UEs in RRC\_CONNECTED, e.g. common channel configuration information.

- [FFS Including ETWS notification, CMAS notification]

- RRC connection control:

- Paging;

- Establishment/modification/suspension/resumption/release of RRC connection, including e.g. assignment/modification of UE identity (C-RNTI), establishment/modification/release of SRBs, access class barring;

Editor’s note: The terminology for establishment/modification/suspension/resumption is FFS.

- Initial security activation, i.e. initial configuration of AS integrity protection (SRBs) and AS ciphering (SRBs, DRBs);

- RRC connection mobility including e.g. intra-frequency and inter-frequency handover, associated security handling, i.e. key/algorithm change, specification of RRC context information transferred between network nodes;

- Establishment/modification/release of RBs carrying user data (DRBs);

- Radio configuration control including e.g. assignment/modification of ARQ configuration, HARQ configuration, DRX configuration;

- In case of DC, cell management including e.g. change of PSCell, addition/modification/release of SCG cell(s)[FFS, and addition/modification/release of SCG TAG(s)].

- Recovery from radio link failure;

- Inter-RAT mobility including e.g. security activation, transfer of RRC context information;

- Measurement configuration and reporting:

- Establishment/modification/release of measurements (e.g. intra-frequency, inter-frequency and inter- RAT measurements);

- Setup and release of measurement gaps;

- Measurement reporting;

- Other functions including e.g. transfer of dedicated NAS information and non-3GPP dedicated information, transfer of UE radio access capability information [FFS support for RAN sharing (multiple PLMN identities)];

# 5 Procedures

## 5.1 General

### 5.1.1 Introduction

This section covers the general requirements.

The procedural requirements are structured according to the main functional areas: system information (5.2), connection control (5.3), inter-RAT mobility (5.4), measurements (5.5) and UE capability transfer (5.6). In addition, sub-clause 5.7 covers other aspects e.g. NAS dedicated information transfer.

### 5.1.2 General requirements

The UE shall:

1> process the received messages in order of reception by RRC, i.e. the processing of a message shall be completed before starting the processing of a subsequent message;

NOTE 1: RAN may initiate a subsequent procedure prior to receiving the UE's response of a previously initiated procedure.

1> within a sub-clause execute the steps according to the order specified in the procedural description;

1> consider the term 'radio bearer' (RB) to cover SRBs and DRBs unless explicitly stated otherwise;

1> set the *rrc-TransactionIdentifier* in the response message, if included, to the same value as included in the message received from NR that triggered the response message;

1> upon receiving a choice value set to *setup*:

2> apply the corresponding received configuration and start using the associated resources, unless explicitly specified otherwise;

1> upon receiving a choice value set to *release*:

2> clear the corresponding configuration and stop using the associated resources;

1> in case the size of a list is extended, upon receiving an extension field comprising the entries in addition to the ones carried by the original field (regardless of whether NR signals more entries in total); apply the following generic behaviour unless explicitly stated otherwise:

2> create a combined list by concatenating the additional entries included in the extension field to the original field while maintaining the order among both the original and the additional entries;

2> for the combined list, created according to the previous, apply the same behaviour as defined for the original field;

## 5.2 System information

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018. For EN\_DC, only MIB is applicable.

Editor’s Note: Discuss whether to keep or temporarily remove this section for the December version. FFS

### 5.2.1 Introduction

System Information (SI) is divided into the *MasterInformationBlock* (MIB) and a number of *SystemInformationBlocks* (SIBs) where:

- the *MasterInformationBlock* (MIB) is always transmitted on the BCH (refer Figure 5.2.2.X.X FFS\_Ref) with a periodicity of 80 ms and repetitions made within 80 ms [X] and it includes parameters that are needed to acquire *SystemInformationBlockType1* (SIB1) from the cell [FFS TBD-RAN1];

- the *SystemInformationBlockType1* (SIB1) is transmitted on the DL-SCH with a periodicity of [X] and repetitions made within [X]. SIB1 includes information regarding the availability and scheduling (e.g. periodicityperiodicity, SI-window size) of other SIBs. It also indicates whether they (i.e. other SIBs) are provided via periodic broadcast basis or only on-demand basis (refer Figure 5.2.2.X.X FFS\_Ref). If other SIBs are provided on-demand then SIB1 includes information for the UE to perform SI request;

- SIBs other than *SystemInformationBlockType1* are carried in *SystemInformation* (SI) messages, which are transmitted on the DL-SCH. Each SI message is transmitted within periodically occurring time domain windows (referred to as SI-windows);

- For SCells, RAN provides the required SI by dedicated signalling. Nevertheless, the UE shall acquire MIB of the PSCell to get SFN timing of the SCG (which may be different from MCG). Upon change of relevant SI, RAN releases and adds the concerned SCell.

Editor’s Note: Reference to RAN1 specification may be used for the MIB/SIB1 periodicities [X].FFS

### 5.2.2 System information acquisition

#### 5.2.2.1 General UE requirements



Figure 5.2.2.X-X: System information acquisition

The UE applies the SI acquisition procedure to acquire the AS- and NAS information. The procedure applies to UEs in RRC\_IDLE, in RRC\_INACTIVE and in RRC\_CONNECTED.

The UE in RRC\_IDLE and RRC\_INACTIVE shall ensure having a valid version of (at least) the *MasterInformationBlock*, *SystemInformationBlockType1* as well as *SystemInformationBlockTypeX* through *SystemInformationBlockTypeY* (depending on support of the concerned RATs for UE controlled mobility).

The UE in RRC\_CONNECTED shall ensure having a valid version of (at least) the *MasterInformationBlock*, *SystemInformationBlockType1* as well as *SystemInformationBlockTypeX* (depending on support of mobility towards the concerned RATs).

The UE shall store relevant SI acquired from the currently camped/serving cell. A version of the SI that the UE acquires and stores remains valid only for a certain time. The UE may use such a stored version of the SI e.g. after cell re-selection, upon return from out of coverage or after SI change indication.

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if the UE is required to store SI other than for the currently camped/serving cell].

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if different versions of SIBs are provided].

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone UE may or shall store several versions of SI].

Editor’s Note: FFS\_Standalone To be updated when above is resolved. Another sub-clause under 5.2.2.2 can be considered depending on the resolution of above.

#### 5.2.2.2 SI validity and need to (re-)acquire SI

The UE shall apply the SI acquisition procedure as defined in clause 5.2.2.3 upon cell selection (e.g. upon power on), cell-reselection, return from out of coverage, after handover completion, after entering RAN from another RAT; whenever the UE does not have a valid version in the stored SI.

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if upon receiving HO command the SI acquisition depend on stored SI]

When the UE acquires a *MasterInformationBlock* or a *SystemInformationBlockType1* or a SI message in a currently camped/serving cell as described in clause 5.2.2.3, the UE shall store the acquired SI.

##### 5.2.2.2.1 SI validity

The UE shall:

1> delete any stored version of SI after [FFS] hours from the moment it was successfully confirmed as valid;

1> if the UE does not have in the stored SI a valid version for the required SI corresponding to the *systemInfoAreaIdentifier* and *systemInfoValueTag*/*systemInfoConfigurationIndex* of that SI in the currently camped/serving cell:

2> (re)acquire the SI as specified in clause 5.2.2.3.

NOTE: At the SI acquisition procedure, the UE may assume the acquired SI in the currently camped/serving cell to be valid in other cells than the currently camped/serving cell based on *systemInfoAreaIdentifier* and *systemInfoValueTag*/*systemInfoConfigurationIndex*.

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone terminology to be used is systemInfoValueTag or systemInfoConfigurationIndex]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone terminology to be used for area ID is systemInfoAreaIdentifier]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone whether the area ID and valuetag is separately signalled or as a single identifier]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone whether the area ID is associated to each SIB/SI message or associated to a group of SIBs/SI messages or all SIBs/SI messages]

##### 5.2.2.2.2 SI change indication and PWS notification

A modification period is used, i.e. updated SI is provided in the modification period following the one where SI change indication is transmitted. RAN transmits SI change indication and PWS notification through paging. Repetitions of SI change indication may occur within preceding modification period.

Editor’s Note : The above descriptive text can remain in this sub-clause or moved under 5.2.1. FFS\_Standalone

If the UE is in RRC\_CONNECTED or is configured to use a DRX cycle smaller than the modification period in RRC\_IDLE or in RRC\_INACTIVE and receives a Paging message:

1> if the received Paging message includes the *etws*/*cmasNotification*;

2> the UE shall immediately re-acquire the SIB1 and apply the SI acquisition procedure as defined in sub-clause [X.X.X.X FFS\_Ref].

1> else, if the received Paging message includes the *systemInfoModification*;

2> the UE shall apply the SI acquisition procedure as defined in sub-clause [X.X.X.X FFS\_Ref] from the start of the next modification period.

NOTE: For PWS notification the SIB1 is re-acquired to know the scheduling information for the PWS messages.

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if upon receiving a SI change indication the SI acquisition depend on stored SI]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if value tags and area identifier included in paging message to reacquire SIB1]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone the update mechanism for access control notifications and other non-access control configuration updates]

#### 5.2.2.3 Acquisition of System Information

##### 5.2.2.3.1 Acquisition of MIB and SIB1

The UE shall:

1> acquire the *MIB* as defined in [X];

1> if the UE is unable to acquire the *MIB*;

2> follow the actions as defined in clause 5.2.2.5;

1> else:

2> perform the actions defined in section 5.2.2.4.1;

1> acquire the SystemInformationBlockType1 as defined in [X];

1> if the UE is unable to acquire the SystemInformationBlockType1:

2> follow the actions as defined in clause 5.2.2.5;

1> else perform the actions defined in section 5.2.2.4.2;

Editor’s Note: Reference to RAN1 [X] specification may be used for the scheduling of MIB and SIB1.FFS\_Standalone

##### 5.2.2.3.2 Acquisition of an SI message

When acquiring an SI message, the UE shall:

1> determine the start of the SI-window for the concerned SI message as follows:

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone the details of the mapping to subframes/slots where the SI messages are scheduled]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if there are any exceptions on e.g. subframes where SI messages cannot be transmitted]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if the SI-windows of different SI messages do not overlap].

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if multiple SI messages can be mapped to same SI window]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if the length of SI-window is common for all SI messages or if it is configured per SI message]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if the UE may accumulate the SI-Message transmissions across several SI-Windows within the Modification Period]

1> if SI message acquisition not triggered due to UE request:

2> receive DL-SCH using the SI-RNTI from the start of the SI-window and continue until the end of the SI-window whose absolute length in time is given by *si-WindowLength*, or until the SI message was received;

2> if the SI message was not received by the end of the SI-window, repeat reception at the next SI-window occasion for the concerned SI message;

1> if SI message acquisition triggered due to UE request:

2> [FFS\_Standalone receive DL-SCH using the SI-RNTI from the start of the SI-window and continue until the end of the SI-window whose absolute length in time is given by si-WindowLength, or until the SI message was received];

2> [FFS\_Standalone if the SI message was not received by the end of the SI-window, repeat reception at the next SI-window occasion for the concerned SI message];

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone on the details of from which SI-window the UE shall receive the DL-SCH upon triggering the SI request.

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone on the details of how many SI-windows the UE should monitor for SI message reception if transmission triggered by UE request]

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if UE need to monitor all the TTIs in SI window for receiving SI message]

1> store the acquired SI message as specified in clause 5.2.2.2.

Editor’s Note: FFS\_Standalone The procedural text for SI message acquisition triggered by UE request will be updated upon finalizing the details.

##### 5.2.2.3.3 Request for on demand system information

When acquiring an SI message, which according to the SystemInformationBlockType1 is indicated to be provided upon UE request, the UE shall:

1> if in RRC\_IDLE or in RRC\_INACTIVE:

2> if the [FFS\_Standalone] field is received in *SIB1*:

3> the UE shall trigger the lower layer to initiate the preamble transmission procedure in accordance with TS 38.321 [3] using the [indicated PRACH preamble] and [indicated PRACH resource];

3> if acknowledgement for SI request is received from lower layer;

4> acquire the requested SI message(s) as defined in sub-clause 5.2.2.3.2;

Editor’s Note: To be updated with details of the Msg1 request procedure.FFS\_Standalone

2> else

3> the UE shall trigger the lower layer to initiate the random access procedure in accordance with TS 38.321 [3];

3> if acknowledgement for SI request is received;

4> acquire the requested SI message(s) as defined in sub-clause 5.2.2.3.2;

Editor’s Note: To be updated with details of the Msg3 request procedure. FFS\_Standalone

1> else (in RRC\_CONNECTED):

2> [details FFS\_Standalone]

Editor’s Note: To be updated with details of the on-demand request procedure in RRC\_CONNECTED. FFS\_Standalone

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone if there is a need for a separate sub-clause to describe case where on demand SI is not successfully received by the UE and where it should initiate a new request]

#### 5.2.2.4 Actions upon receipt of SI message

##### 5.2.2.4.1 Actions upon reception of the MasterInformationBlock

Upon receiving the MasterInformationBlock the UE shall:

1> store the acquired *MIB*;

1> if the UE is in RRC\_IDLE or if the UE is in RRC\_INACTIVE or if the UE is in RRC\_CONNECTED while *T311* is running: [FFS]

2> if the *cellBarred* in the acquired MIB is set to *barred*;

3> consider the cell as barred in accordance with TS 38.304 [FFS];

2> else,

3> apply the received parameter(s) [FFS] to acquire *SIB1*.

##### 5.2.2.4.2 Actions upon reception of the SystemInformationBlockType1

Upon receiving the SystemInformationBlockType1 the UE shall:

1> store the acquired *SIB1*;

1> if the UE has a stored valid version of the required SIB(s) associated with the *systemInfoAreaIdentifier* and *systemInfoValueTag*/*systemInfoConfigurationIndex* in the acquired *SIB1*:

2> use that stored version of the SIB;

1> else if the *SIB1* message indicates that the SI message(s) is only provided on request:

2> trigger a request to acquire the SI message(s) (if needed) as defined in sub-clause 5.2.2.3;

1> else:

2> acquire the SI message(s) (if needed) as defined in sub-clause 5.2.2.3.2, which are provided according to the schedulingInfoList in the SystemInformationBlockType1;

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone Whether there is an additional indication that an on-demand SI is actually being broadcast at this instant in time]

Editor’s Note: To be updated when content of the SystemInformationBlockType1 has been agreed. FFS\_Standalone.

Editor’s Note: To be updated how to capture the UE behaviour when some required SIBs are from broadcast and other required SIBs through SI request.

##### 5.2.2.4.3 Actions upon reception of SystemInformationBlockTypeX

Editor’s Note: To be extended with further sub-clauses as more SIBs are defined. FFS\_Standalone

#### 5.2.2.5 Essential system information missing

The UE shall:

1> if in RRC\_IDLE or in RRC\_INACTIVE:

2> if the UE is unable to acquire the *MIB*; or

2> if the UE is unable to acquire the *SIB1* and UE does not have a stored valid version of SIB1; or

2> [FFS\_Standalone if the UE is unable to acquire the [FFS essential SystemInformationBlockTypeX] and UE does not have a stored valid version of SystemInformationBlockTypeX];

3> consider the cell as barred in accordance with TS 38.304 [X]; and

3> perform barring as if intraFreqReselection is set to allowed;

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone on details of RRC connection re-establishment procedure and corresponding reading of SI in RRC\_CONNECTED].

Editor’s Note: [FFS\_Standalone whether all the information needed to access the cell is included in SIB1 or if both SIB1 and SIB2 are essential in NR].

## 5.3 Connection control

Editor's note: FFS The structure and content of this subclause is a subject for discussion, e.g. potential merging of connection establishment and re-establishment messages, mobility aspects etc.

### 5.3.1 Introduction

### 5.3.2 Paging

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.3.3 RRC connection establishment

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.3.4 Initial security activation

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.3.5 RRC reconfiguration

Editor’s Note: FFS\_Standalone: Check terminology (“RAN may …” or “Network may …”). Update figures accordingly.

#### 5.3.5.1 General



Figure 5.3.5.1-1: RRC reconfiguration, successful



Figure 5.3.5.1-2: RRC reconfiguration, failure

The purpose of this procedure is to modify an RRC connection, e.g. to establish/modify/release RBs, to performreconfiguration with sync, to setupmodify/release measurements, to add/modify/release SCells and cell groups. As part of the procedure, NAS dedicated information may be transferred from RAN to the UE.

In EN-DC, SRB3 can be used to perform measurement, MAC, RLC, PDCP, physical layer and RLF timers and constants (re-)configurations.

#### 5.3.5.2 Initiation

RAN may initiate the RRC reconfiguration procedure to a UE in RRC\_CONNECTED. RAN applies the procedure as follows:

- the *reconfigurationWithSync* is included only when AS-security has been activated, and SRB2 with at least one DRB are setup and not suspended;

- the establishment of RBs (other than SRB1, that is established during RRC connection establishment) is performed only when AS security has been activated;

- the addition of Secondary Cell Groups and SCells is performed only when AS security has been activated;

#### 5.3.5.3 Reception of an *RRCReconfiguration* by the UE

Editor’s note: FFS / TODOs:

- Handling of first reconfiguration after re-establishment

- clarify that/whether SCG(s) must perform a reconfiguration with sync when the MCG performs a synchronous reconfiguration

The UE shall perform the following actions upon reception of the *RRCReconfiguration*:

Editor’s Note: For EN-DC, MCG configuration is not supported.

1> if the *RRCReconfiguration* includes the *masterCellGroupConfig*:

2> perform the cell group configuration for the MCG according to 5.3.5.5;

Editor’s Note: For EN-DC, SCG release is not supported by *SecondaryCellGroupToReleaseList* (instead by field in 36.331). FFS how to capture

1> if the *RRCReconfiguration* includes the *SecondaryCellGroupToReleaseList*:

2> perform the SCG release according to 5.3.5.4;

1> if the *RRCReconfiguration* includes the *secondaryCellGroupToAddModList*:

2> perform the cell group configuration for the SCG according to 5.3.5.5;

1> if the *RRCReconfiguration* message contains the *radioBearerConfig*:

2> perform the radio bearer configuration according to 5.3.5.6;

Editor’s Note: *dedicatedInfoNASList* is not supported for EN-DC. FFS how to capture

1> if the *RRCReconfiguration* message includes the *dedicatedInfoNASList*:

2> forward each element of the *dedicatedInfoNASList* to upper layers in the same order as listed;

1> if the *RRCReconfiguration* message includes the *measConfig*:

2> perform the measurement configuration procedure as specified in 5.5.2;

X1> if the UE is operating in EN-DC (MCG is E-UTRA):

2> if *RRCReconfiguration* was received via SRB1:

3> construct *RRCReconfigurationComplete* message and submit it via the EUTRA MCG as specified in TS 36.331 [10].

3> if *reconfigurationWithSync* was included in *spCellConfig* of an SCG:

4> initiate the random access procedure on the SpCell, as specified in TS 38.321 [3];

2> else (*RRCReconfiguration* was received via SRB3):

3> submit the *RRCReconfigurationComplete* message via SRB3 to lower layers for transmission using the new configuration;

1> else (NR SA or NE-DC):

2> submit the *RRCReconfigurationComplete* message via SRB1 to lower layers for transmission using the new configuration;

2> if *reconfigurationWithSync* was included in *spCellConfig* of an SCG:

3> initiate the random access procedure on the SpCell, as specified in TS 38.321 [3];

1> if MAC of an NR cell group successfully completes a random access procedure triggered above;

2> stop timer T304 for that cell group;

2> apply the parts of the CQI reporting configuration, the scheduling request configuration and the sounding RS configuration that do not require the UE to know the SFN of the respective target SpCell, if any;

2> apply the parts of the measurement and the radio resource configuration that require the UE to know the SFN of the respective target SpCell (e.g. measurement gaps, periodic CQI reporting, scheduling request configuration, sounding RS configuration), if any, upon acquiring the SFN of that target SpCell;

2> the procedure ends;

#### 5.3.5.4 Secondary cell group release

The UE shall:

1> for each CellGroupId in the *SecondaryCellGroupToReleaseList* or as a result of SCG release triggered by E-UTRA:

2> reset SCG MAC, if configured;

2> for each RLC bearer that is part of the SCG configuration:

3> perform RLC bearer release procedure as specified in 5.3.5.5.3;

2> release the entire SCG configuration;

2> stop timer T313, if running;

2> stop timer T304, if running;

NOTE: Release of cell group means only release of the lower layer configuration of the cell group but the RadioBearerConfig may not be released.

#### 5.3.5.5 Cell Group configuration

##### 5.3.5.5.1 General

The network configures the UE with a Master Cell Group (MCG) and zero or one Secondary Cell Groups (SCG). For EN-DC, the MCG is configured as specified in TS 36.331 [10]. The network provides the configuration parameters for a cell group in the *CellGroupConfig* IE. *CellGroupConfig* with *cellGroupId* 0 is used for the MCG.

The UE performs the following actions based on a received *CellGroupConfig* IE:

1> if the *CellGroupConfig* contains the *spCellConfig* with *reconfigurationWithSync*:

2> perform Reconfiguration with sync according to 5.3.5.5.2;

2> resume all suspended radio bearers and resume SCG transmission for all radio bearers, if suspended;

1> if the *CellGroupConfig* contains the *rlc-BearerToReleaseList*:

2> perform RLC bearer release as specified in 5.3.5.5.3;

1> for each element in *rlc-BearerToAddModList*:

2> configure the RLC bearer as specified in 5.3.5.5.4;

1> if the *CellGroupConfig* contains the *mac-CellGroupConfig*:

2> configure the MAC entity of this cell group as specified in 5.3.5.5.5;

1> if the *CellGroupConfig* contains the *rlf-TimersAndConstants*:

2> configure the RLF timers for this cell group as specified in 5.3.5.5.6;

1> if the *CellGroupConfig* contains the *sCellToReleaseList*:

2> release the SCell as specified in 5.3.5.5.8;

*spCellConfig*

1> if the *CellGroupConfig* contains the *sCellToAddModList*:

2> add or modify the SCell as specified in 5.3.5.5.9;

##### 5.3.5.5.2 Reconfiguration with sync

The UE shall perform the following actions to execute a reconfiguration with sync.

Editor’s Note: Master cell group config is not supported for EN-DC. FFS how to capture

1> if the *cellGroupId* of the *CellGroupConfig* triggering the reconfiguration with sync is 0 (master cell group):

2> stop timer T310, if running;

2> stop timer T312, if running;

2> start timer T304 with the timer value set to *t304*, as included in the *reconfigurationWithSync*;

1> else (secondary cell group):

2> stop timer T313, if running;

2> start timer T304 with the timer value set to *t304*, as included in the *reconfigurationWithSync*;

Editor’s Note: FFS\_TODO: update below after L1 parameter email discussion

1> if the *frequencyInfoDL* is included:

2> consider the target SpCell to be one on the frequency indicated by the *frequencyInfoDL* with a physical cell identity indicated by the *physCellId*;

1> else:

2> consider the target SpCell to be one on the frequency of the source SpCell with a physical cell identity indicated by the *physCellId*;

1> start synchronising to the DL of the target SpCell;

NOTE X: The UE should perform the reconfiguration with sync as soon as possible following the reception of the RRC message triggering the reconfiguration with sync, which could be before confirming successful reception (HARQ and ARQ) of this message.

1> reset the MAC entity of this cell group;

1> consider the SCell(s) of this cell group, if configured, to be in deactivated state;

1> apply the value of the *newUE-Identity* as the C-RNTI for this cell group;

Editor’s Note: *fullConfig* is not supported in EN-DC.

1> if the *RRCReconfiguration* message includes the *fullConfig*:

2> perform the radio configuration procedure as specified in 5.3.5.7;

Editor’s Note: Verify that this does not configure some common parameters which are later discarded due to e.g. SCell release or due to LCH release.

1> configure lower layers in accordance with the received s*pCellConfigCommon*;

1> configure lower layers in accordance with any additional fields, not covered in the previous, if included in the received *reconfigurationWithSync*;

1> perform the measurement related actions as specified in 5.5.3.1;

##### 5.3.5.5.3 RLC bearer release

The UE shall:

1> for each *logicalChannelIdentity* value included in the *rlc-BearerToReleaseList* that is part of the current UE configuration (LCH release); or

1> for each *logicalChannelIdentity* value that is to be released as the result of full configuration option according to 5.3.5.7 or as the result of an SCG release according to 5.3.5.4:

2> release the RLC entity or entities (includes discarding all pending RLC PDUs and RLC SDUs);

2> release the DTCH logical channel.

##### 5.3.5.5.4 RLC bearer addition/modification

For each *LCH-Config* received in a *rlc-BearerToAddModList* IE the UE shall:

1> if the UE’s current configuration contains a RLC bearer with the received *logicalChannelIdentity*:

2> if *reestablishRLC* is received:

3> re-establish the RLC entity as specified in 38.322;

2> reconfigure the RLC entity or entities in accordance with the received *rlc-Config*;

2> reconfigure the logical channel in accordance with the received *mac-LogicalChannelConfig*;

NOTE: The network does not re-associate an already configured LCH with another radio bearer. Hence *servedRadioBearer* is not present in this case.

1> else (a logical channel with the given *logicalChannelIdentity* was not configured before):

2> if the *logicalChannelIdentity* corresponds to an SRB (i.e. ID less than or equal to 3) and *rlc-Config* is not included:

3> establish an RLC entity in accordance with the default configuration defined in 9.2 for the corresponding SRB;

2> else:

3> establish an RLC entity in accordance with the received *rlc-Config*;

2> if the *logicalChannelIdentity* corresponds to an SRB (i.e. ID less than or equal to 3) and if *mac-LogicalChannelConfig* is not included:

3> configure this MAC entity with a logical channel in accordance to the default configuration defined in 9.2 for the corresponding SRB;

2> else:

3> configure this MAC entity with a logical channel in accordance to the received *mac-LogicalChannelConfig*;

2> associate this logical channel with the PDCP entity identified by *servedRadioBearer*;

##### 5.3.5.5.5 MAC entity configuration

##### 5.3.5.5.6 RLF Timers & Constants configuration

##### 5.3.5.5.7 SpCell Configuration

Editor’s Note: May contain procedures similar to the one in 36.331, section 5.3.10.6 (Physical channel reconfiguration), i.e., applying L1 parameters for the SpCell

##### 5.3.5.5.8 SCell Release

The UE shall:

1> if the release is triggered by reception of the *sCellToReleaseList*:

2> for each *sCellIndex* value included in the *sCellToReleaseList*:

3> if the current UE configuration includes an SCell with value *sCellIndex*:

4> release the SCell;

Editor’s Note: Need to be updated for EN-DC.FFS.

1> if the release is triggered by RRC connection re-establishment:

2> release all SCells that are part of the current UE configuration;

##### 5.3.5.5.9 SCell Addition/Modification

The UE shall:

1> for each *sCellIndex* value included in the *sCellToAddModList* that is not part of the current UE configuration (SCell addition):

2> add the SCell, corresponding to the *sCellIndex*, in accordance with the *sCellConfigCommon* and *sCellConfigDedicated*;

2> configure lower layers to consider the SCell to be in deactivated state;

Editor’s Note: FFS Check automatic measurement handling for SCells.

2> for each *measId* included in the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig*:

3> if SCells are not applicable for the associated measurement; and

3> if the concerned SCell is included in *cellsTriggeredList* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*:

4> remove the concerned SCell from *cellsTriggeredList* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*;

1> for each *sCellIndex* value included in the *sCellToAddModList* that is part of the current UE configuration (SCell modification):

2> modify the SCell configuration in accordance with the *sCellConfigDedicated*;

#### 5.3.5.6 Radio Bearer configuration

##### 5.3.5.6.1 General

The UE shall perform the following actions based on a received *RadioBearerConfig* IE:

1> if the *RadioBearerConfig* includes the *srb-ToReleaseList*:

2> perform the SRB release as specified in 5.3.5.6.2;

1> if the *RadioBearerConfig* includes the *srb-ToAddModList*:

2> perform the SRB addition or reconfiguration as specified in 5.3.5.6.3;

1> if the *RadioBearerConfig* includes the *drb-ToReleaseList*:

2> perform DRB release as specified in 5.3.5.6.4;

1> if the *RadioBearerConfig* includes the *drb-ToAddModList*:

2> perform DRB addition or reconfiguration as specified in 5.3.5.6.5;

##### 5.3.5.6.2 SRB release

Editor’s note: FFS / TODO: check handling during full configuration

The UE shall for the SRB with SRB Identity corresponding to *srb-ToReleaseList*:

1> release the PDCP entity of the SRB.

##### 5.3.5.6.3 SRB addition/modification

The UE shall:

1> for each *srb-Identity* value included in the *srb-ToAddModList* that is not part of the current UE configuration or configured with *pdcp-Config* (SRB establishment or reconfiguration from E-UTRA PDCP to NR PDCP):

2> establish a PDCP entity and configure it with the security algorithms according to *securityConfig* and apply the keys (KRRCint and KRRCencKRRCenc) associated with the KeNB/S-KgNB as indicated in *keyToUse*, if applicable;

2> if the current UE configuration as specified in TS 36.331 includes an SRB identified with the same *srb-Identity* value:

3> associate the E-UTRA RLC and DCCH entities of this SRB with the NR PDCP entity;

3> release the E-UTRA PDCP entity of this SRB;

2> if the *pdcp-Config* is included:

3> configure the PDCP entity in accordance with the received *pdcp-Config*;

2> else:

3> configure the PDCP entity in accordance with the specified configuration defined in 9.2.1 for the corresponding SRB;

1> for each *srb-Identity* value included in the *srb-ToAddModList* that is part of the current UE configuration:

2> if *reestablishPDCP* is set:

3> configure the PDCP entity to apply the integrity protection algorithm and KRRCint key associated with the KeNB/S-KgNB as indicated in *keyToUse* , i.e. the integrity protection configuration shall be applied to all subsequent messages received and sent by the UE, including the message used to indicate the successful completion of the procedure;

3> configure the PDCP entity to apply the ciphering algorithm and KRRCenc key associated with the KeNB/S-KgNB as indicated in *keyToUse*, i.e. the ciphering configuration shall be applied to all subsequent messages received and sent by the UE, including the message used to indicate the successful completion of the procedure;

3> re-establish the PDCP entity of this SRB as specified in 38.323;

3> resume the SRB, if suspended;

2> if the *pdcp-Config* is included:

3> reconfigure the PDCP entity in accordance with the received *pdcp-Config*.

##### 5.3.5.6.4 DRB release

Editor’s Note: FFS / TODO: Add handling for the new QoS concept (mapping of flows; configuration of QFI-to-DRB mapping; reflective QoS…) but keep also EPS-Bearer handling for the EN-DC case

The UE shall:

1> for each *drb-Identity* value included in the *drb-ToReleaseList* that is part of the current UE configuration (DRB release); or

1> for each *drb-identity* value that is to be released as the result of full configuration option according to 5.3.5.7:

2> release the PDCP entity;

Editor’s Note: FFS / TODO: handling of indication to higher layers in EN-DC

1> if new bearer is not added with same *eps-BearerIdentity*:

2> if the procedure was triggered due to handover:

3> indicate the release of the DRB(s) and the *eps-BearerIdentity* of the released DRB(s) to upper layers after successful handover;

2> else:

3> indicate the release of the DRB(s) and the *eps-BearerIdentity* of the released DRB(s) to upper layers immediately;

NOTE: The UE does not consider the message as erroneous if the *drb-ToReleaseList* includes any *drb-Identity* value that is not part of the current UE configuration.

NOTE: Whether or not the RLC- and MAC entities associated with this PDCP entity are reset or released is determined by the *CellGroupConfig*.

##### 5.3.5.6.5 DRB addition/modification

The UE shall:

1> for each *drb-Identity* value included in the *drb-ToAddModList* that is not part of the current UE configuration (DRB establishment including the case when full configuration option is used):

2> establish a PDCP entity and configure it in accordance with the received *pdcp-Config*;

2> configure the PDCP entity with the security algorithms according to securityConfig and apply the keys (KUPenc) associated with the KeNB/S-KgNB as indicated in *keyToUse*;

Editor’s Note: Full configuration is not applicable for EN-DC. For EN-DC, NR *RRCReconfiguration* message does not include the *fullConfig* IE.

2> if the *RRCReconfiguration* message includes the *fullConfig* IE:

3> associate the established DRB with corresponding included *eps-BearerIdentity*;

2> else if no DRB was configured with the same *eps-BearerIdentity* prior to receiving this reconfiguration:

Editor’s Note: FFS\_CHECK:

3> indicate the establishment of the DRB(s) and the *eps-BearerIdentity* of the established DRB(s) to upper layers;

1> for each *drb-Identity* value included in the *drb-ToAddModList* that is part of the current UE configuration:

2> if *reestablishPDCP* is set:

3> configure the PDCP entitiy of this *RadioBearerConfig* to apply the ciphering algorithm and KUPenc key associated with the KeNB/S-KgNB as indicated in *keyToUse*, i.e. the ciphering configuration shall be applied to all subsequent messages received and sent by the UE;

3> re-establish the PDCP entity of this DRB as specified in 38.323, [REF], section 5.1.2;

3> resume the DRB, if suspended;

2> else, if *recoverPDCP* is set:

3> trigger the PDCP entity of this DRB to perform data recovery as specified in 38.323;

2> if the *pdcp-Config* is included:

3> reconfigure the PDCP entity in accordance with the received *pdcp-Config*;

Editor’s Note: verify that TS 38.323 covers case when more than one RLC entity is associated with the PDCP entity.

NOTE: Removal and addition of the same *drb-Identity* in a single *radioResourceConfig* is not supported. In case *drb-Identity* is removed and added due to handover or re-establishment with the full configuration option, the network can use the same value of *drb-Identity*.

NOTE: When determining whether a drb-Identity value is part of the current UE configuration, the UE does not distinguish which *RadioBearerConfig* and *DRB-ToAddModList* that DRB was originally configured in. To re-associate a DRB with a different key (KeNB to S-KeNB or vice versa), the network provides the *drb-Identity* value in the (target) *drb-ToAddModList* and sets the *reestablish* flag. The network does not list the *drb-Identity* in the (source) *drb-ToReleaseList*.

NOTE: When setting the *reestablishPDCP* flag for a radio bearer, the network ensures that the RLC receiver entities do not deliver old PDCP PDUs to the re-established PDCP entity. It does that e.g. by triggering a reconfiguration with sync of the cell group hosting the old RLC entity or by releasing the old RLC entity.

#### 5.3.5.7 Full configuration

Editor’s Note: This subclause is not applicable for EN-DC, but is targeted for completion in June 2018. For EN-DC,NR *RRCReconfiguration* message does not include the *fullConfig* IE.

The UE shall:

1> release/clear all current dedicated radio configurations except the MCG C-RNTI, the MCG security configuration and the PDCP, RLC, logical channel configurations for the RBs and the logged measurement configuration;

NOTE X: Radio configuration is not just the resource configuration but includes other configurations like *MeasConfig*.

1> if the sp*CellConfig* in the *masterCellGroupConfig* includes the *reconfigurationWithSync*:

2> release/clear all current common radio configurations;

2> use the default values specified in 9.2.5 for timer T310, T311 and constant N310, N311;

1> else (full configuration after re-establishment):

2> use values for timers T301, T310, T311 and constants N310, N311, as included in *ue-TimersAndConstants* received in *SystemInformationBlockType2* (or *SystemInformationBlockType2-NB* in NB-IoT);

1> apply the default physical channel configuration as specified in 9.2.4;

1> apply the default semi-persistent scheduling configuration as specified in 9.2.3;

1> apply the default MAC main configuration as specified in 9.2.2;

1> for each *srb-Identity* value included in the *srb-ToAddModList* (SRB reconfiguration):

2> apply the specified configuration defined in 9.1.2 for the corresponding SRB;

2> apply the corresponding default RLC configuration for the SRB specified in 9.2.1.1 for SRB1 or in 9.2.1.2 for SRB2;

2> apply the corresponding default logical channel configuration for the SRB as specified in 9.2.1.1 for SRB1 or in 9.2.1.2 for SRB2;

NOTE X: This is to get the SRBs (SRB1 and SRB2 for handover and SRB2 for reconfiguration after re-establishment) to a known state from which the reconfiguration message can do further configuration.

Editor’s Note: FFS\_Standalone: Replace the following by corresponding handling of “PDU Sessions” and/or “Flows”. Remember: Current UE configuration refers to the current MCG and SCG configuration, i.e., it handles also DRBs associated with the S-KeNB prior to the HO/Re-establishment.

1> for each *eps-BearerIdentity* value included in the *drb-ToAddModList* that is part of the current UE configuration:

2> release the PDCP entity;

2> release the RLC entity or entities;

2> release the DTCH logical channel;

2> release the *drb-identity*;

NOTE: This will retain the *eps-bearerIdentity* but remove the DRBs including *drb-identity* of these bearers from the current UE configuration and trigger the setup of the DRBs within the AS using the new configuration. The *eps-bearerIdentity* acts as the anchor for associating the released and re-setup DRB. In the AS the DRB re-setup is equivalent with a new DRB setup (including new PDCP and logical channel configurations).

1> for each *eps-BearerIdentity* value that is part of the current UE configuration but not part of the *drb-ToAddModList:*

2> perform DRB release as specified in 5.3.5.6.4;

#### 5.3.5.8 Security key update

Upon reception of *sk-Counter* the UE shall:

Editor’s Note: FFS: Consider mentioning that this corresponds to SCG-counter in 33.401.

Editor’s Note: FFS reference to 33.401 correct?

1> update the S-KgNB key based on the KeNB key and using the received *sk-Counter* value, as specified in TS 33.401 [32];

1> derive the KRRCenc and KUPenc key as specified in TS 33.401 [32];

1> derive the KRRCint key as specified in TS 33.401 [32];

1> for all radio bearers configured with S-KgNB:

2> configure lower layers to apply the KRRCint key, i.e. the integrity protection shall be applied to all subsequent messages received and sent by the UE, including the message used to indicate the successful completion of the procedure;

2> configure lower layers to apply the ciphering algorithm, the KRRCenc key and the KUPenc key, i.e. the ciphering shall be applied to all subsequent messages received and sent by the UE, including the message used to indicate the successful completion of the procedure.

#### 5.3.5.9 Reconfiguration failure

Editor’s Note: Added sub-sections for the different failure cases that may occur during the RRCReconfiguration procedure.

##### 5.3.5.9.1 Integrity check failure

Editor’s Note: Removed “SIB3” from heading so that this sub-section can easily be expanded to stand-alone case (if considered necessary). FFS\_Standalone

The UE shall:

1> upon integrity check failure indication from NR lower layers for SRB3:

2> initiate the SCG failure information procedure as specified in subclause 5.7.3 to report SRB3 integrity check failure;

##### 5.3.5.9.2 Inability to comply with RRCReconfiguration

The UE shall:

1> if the UE is operating in EN-DC:

2> if the UE is unable to comply with (part of) the configuration included in the *RRCReconfiguration* message received over SRB3;

3> continue using the configuration used prior to the reception of *RRCReconfiguration* message;

3> initiate the SCG failure information procedure as specified in subclause 5.7.3 to report SCG reconfiguration error, upon which the connection reconfiguration procedure ends;

2> else, if the UE is unable to comply with (part of) the configuration included in the *RRCReconfiguration* message received over MCG SRB1;

3> continue using the configuration used prior to the reception of *RRCReconfiguration* message;

3> initiate the connection re-establishment procedure as specified in TS 36.331 [10, 5.3.7], upon which the connection reconfiguration procedure ends;

NOTE 1: The UE may apply above failure handling also in case the *RRCReconfiguration* message causes a protocol error for which the generic error handling as defined in 10 specifies that the UE shall ignore the message.

NOTE 2: If the UE is unable to comply with part of the configuration, it does not apply any part of the configuration, i.e. there is no partial success/failure.

##### 5.3.5.9.3 T304 expiry (Reconfiguration with sync Failure)

The UE shall:

1> if T304 of the master cell group expires:

Editor’s Note: FFS\_Standalone Add the actions similarly to the ones in 36.331 section 5.3.5.6 (handover failure)

1> else, if T304 of a secondary cell group expires:

NOTE 1: Following T304 expiry any dedicated preamble, if provided within the rach-ConfigDedicated, is not available for use by the UE anymore.

2> initiate the SCG failure information procedure as specified in subclause 5.7.3 to report SCG change failure;

### 5.3.6 Counter check

FFS

### 5.3.7 RRC connection re-establishment

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.3.8 RRC connection release

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.3.9 RRC connection release requested by upper layers

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.3.10 Radio resource configuration

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.3.11 Radio link failure related actions

#### 5.3.11.1 Detection of physical layer problems in RRC\_CONNECTED

The UE shall:

1> upon receiving N310 consecutive "out-of-sync" indications for the SpCell from lower layers while T311 is not running:

2> start timer T310;

Editor’s Note: FFS: The following is wrong since according to other agreed TPs there is no T307 and no N313/T313. Rewrite the previous statement so that it applies to the PCell of any cell group. Remove the following. Update also PCell/PScell to SpCell

1> upon receiving N313 consecutive "out-of-sync" indications for the PSCell from lower layers while T304 is not running:

2> start T313;

Editor’s Note: FFS: Under which condition physical layer problems detection is performed, e.g. neither T300, T301, T304 nor T311 is running. It’s subject to the harmonization of the RRC procedures for RRC Connection establishment/resume/re-establishment and RRC connection reconfiguration.

Editor’s Note: FFS: The naming of the timers.

#### 5.3.11.2 Recovery of physical layer problems

Upon receiving N311 consecutive "in-sync" indications for the PCell from lower layers while T310 is running, the UE shall:

1> stop timer T310;

Editor’s Note: FFS: whether to support T312 for early RLF declaration in NR. Consider whether T310 and T313 can be combined into one timer, since only one is active at a time. If combined, procedure text need to be modified.

NOTE 1: In this case, the UE maintains the RRC connection without explicit signalling, i.e. the UE maintains the entire radio resource configuration.

NOTE 2: Periods in time where neither "in-sync" nor "out-of-sync" is reported by layer 1 do not affect the evaluation of the number of consecutive "in-sync" or "out-of-sync" indications.

Upon receiving N314 consecutive "in-sync" indications for the PSCell from lower layers while T313 is running, the UE shall:

1> stop timer T313.

#### 5.3.11.3 Detection of radio link failure

The UE shall:

1> upon T310 expiry; or

1> upon random access problem indication from MCG MAC while T311 is not running; or

Editor’s Note: FFS: Under which condition physical layer problems detection is performed, e.g. neither T300, T301, T304 nor T311 is running. It’s subject to the harmonization of the RRC procedures for RRC Connection establishment/resume/re-establishment and RRC connection reconfiguration.

1> upon indication from MCG RLC that the maximum number of retransmissions has been reached:

Editor’s Note: FFS whether maximum ARQ retransmission is only criteria for RLC failure.

2> consider radio link failure to be detected for the MCG i.e. RLF;

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether indications related to beam failure recovery may affect the declaration of RLF.

Editor’s Note: FFS: How to handle RLC failure in CA duplication for MCG DRB and SRB.

Editor’s Note: FFS: RLF related measurement reports e.g. *VarRLF-Report* is supported in NR.

2> if AS security has not been activated:

3> perform the actions upon leaving RRC\_CONNECTED as specified in x.x.x FFS\_Ref, with release cause 'other';

2> else:

3> initiate the connection re-establishment procedure as specified in x.x.x FFS\_Ref.

The UE shall:

1> upon T313 expiry; or

1> upon random access problem indication from SCG MAC; or

1> upon indication from SCG RLC that the maximum number of retransmissions has been reached:

2> consider radio link failure to be detected for the SCG i.e. SCG-RLF;

Editor’s Note: FFS: How to handle RLC failure in CA duplication for SCG DRB and SRB.

2> initiate the SCG failure information procedure as specified in 5.7. 3..,2 to report SCG radio link failure;

### 5.3.12 UE actions upon leaving RRC\_CONNECTED

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.3.13 UE actions upon PUCCH/SRS release request

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

## 5.4 Inter-RAT mobility

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

## 5.5 Measurements

### 5.5.1 Introduction

Editor’s Note: FFS In the context of subclause 5.5., the term “beam” will be later aligned with the RAN1 terminology when stabilized. For the current version, the term “beam” refers to the reference signals SS/PBCH Blocks and/or CSI-RS resources. Beam level measurements refer to the output of the L1 filters as defined in 38.215, i.e., SS-RSRP, SS-RSRQ, SS-SINR, CSI-RSRP, CSI-RSRQ and CSI-SINR.

The network may configure an RRC\_CONNECTED UE to perform measurements and report them in accordance with the measurement configuration. The measurement configuration is provided by means of dedicated signalling i.e. using the *RRCReconfiguration.*

The network may configure the UE to perform the following types of measurements:

- NR measurements.

- Inter-RAT measurements of E-UTRA frequencies.

The network may configure the UE to perform the following NR measurements, based on different RS types SS/PBCH Block or CSI-RS:

- SS/PBCH Block based intra-frequency measurements: measurements at SSB(s) of neighbour cell(s) where both the center frequency(ies) and subcarrier spacing are the same as each serving cell’s CD- SSB.

- SS/PBCH Block based inter-frequency measurements: measurements at SSB(s) of neighbour cell(s) that have different center frequency(ies) or different subcarrier spacing compared to each serving cell’s CD- SSB.

- CSI-RS based intra-frequency measurements: measurements at CSI-RS(s) resource(s) of configured neighbour cell(s) whose bandwidth(s) are within the bandwidth(s) of the CSI-RS resource(s) on the serving cell(s) configured for measurements and having the same subcarrier spacing of the CSI-RS resource(s) on the serving cell(s) configured for measurements.

- CSI-RS based inter-frequency measurements: measurements at CSI-RS(s) resource(s) of configured neighbour cell(s) whose bandwidth(s) are not within the bandwidth(s) or having different subcarrier spacing compared to the CSI-RS resource(s) on the serving cell(s) configured for measurements.

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether the definition of inter-frequency and intra-frequency measurements provided by RAN4 should be removed from 38.331.

The network may configure the UE to report the following measurement information based on SS/PBCH block(s):

- Measurement results per SS/PBCH block.

- Measurement results per cell based on SS/PBCH block(s).

- SS/PBCH block(s) indexes.

The network may configure the UE to report the following measurement information based on CSI-RS resources:

- Measurement results per CSI-RS resource.

- Measurement results per cell based on CSI-RS resource(s).

- CSI-RS resource measurement identifiers.

The measurement configuration includes the following parameters:

**1. Measurement objects:** A list of objects on which the UE shall perform the measurements.

- For intra-frequency and inter-frequency measurements a measurement object is associated to an NR carrier frequency. Associated with this NR carrier frequency, the network may configure a list of cell specific offsets, a list of 'blacklisted' cells and a list of 'whitelisted' cells. Blacklisted cells are not applicable in event evaluation or measurement reporting. Whitelisted cells are the only ones applicable in event evaluation or measurement reporting.

Editor’s Note: Revisit the formulation below, and as well as how to capture the following additional agreements:

2 More than one MO with CSI-RS resources for measurement can be associated to the same SSB location in frequency. The SSB is at least used for timing reference.

3 In case that more than one MO with CSI-RS resources for measurement is associated to the same SSB location in frequency the UE is indicated which MO corresponds to the serving carrier.

FFS whether the indication is in MO or serving cell configuration.

- UE determines which MO corresponds to the serving cell frequency from the frequency location of the Cell defined SSB that is contained within the serving cell configuration.

Editor’s Note: FFS Detailed definition of a measurement object based on RAN1/RAN4 input e.g. concerning SS Blocks transmissions. Revisit the procedures describing neighbouring cells on associated frequency and the concept of serving frequency. Consider summarizing the description if becomes lengthy.

- For inter-RAT E-UTRA measurements a measurement object is a single EUTRA carrier frequency. Associated with this E-UTRA carrier frequency, the network can configure a list of cell specific offsets, a list of 'blacklisted' cells and a list of 'whitelisted' cells. Blacklisted cells are not applicable in event evaluation or measurement reporting. Whitelisted cells are the only ones applicable in event evaluation or measurement reporting.

**2. Reporting configurations:** A list of reporting configurations where there can be one or multiple reporting configurations per measurement object. Each reporting configuration consists of the following:

- Reporting criterion: The criterion that triggers the UE to send a measurement report. This can either be periodical or a single event description.

- RS type: The RS that the UE uses for cell measurement results (SS/PBCH block or CSI-RS).

- Reporting format: The quantities per cell and/or per beam that the UE includes in the measurement report (e.g. RSRP) and other associated information such as the maximum number of cells and the maximum number beams per cell to report.

**3. Measurement identities:** A list of measurement identities where each measurement identity links one measurement object with one reporting configuration. By configuring multiple measurement identities, it is possible to link more than one measurement object to the same reporting configuration, as well as to link more than one reporting configuration to the same measurement object. The measurement identity is also included in the measurement report that triggered the reporting, serving as a reference to the network.

**4. Quantity configurations:** The quantity configuration defines the measurement quantities and associated filtering used for all event evaluation and related reporting of that measurement type. For NR measurements, the network may configure up to 2 quantity configurations with a reference in the NR measurement object to the configuration that is to be used.

**5. Measurement gaps:** Periods that the UE may use to perform measurements, i.e. no (UL, DL) transmissions are scheduled.

An RRC\_CONNECTED UE maintains a single measurement object list, a single reporting configuration list, and a single measurement identities list. The measurement object list possibly includes NR intra-frequency object(s), NR inter-frequency object(s) and inter-RAT objects. Similarly, the reporting configuration list includes NR and inter-RAT reporting configurations. Any measurement object can be linked to any reporting configuration of the same RAT type. Some reporting configurations may not be linked to a measurement object. Likewise, some measurement objects may not be linked to a reporting configuration.

The measurement procedures distinguish the following types of cells:

1. The serving cell(s) - these are the SpCell and one or more SCells, if configured for a UE supporting CA.

2. Listed cells - these are cells listed within the measurement object(s).

3. Detected cells - these are cells that are not listed within the measurement object(s) but are detected by the UE on the carrier frequency(ies) indicated by the measurement object(s).

For NR measurement object(s), the UE measures and reports on the serving cell(s), listed cells and/or detected cells.

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether the definitions of serving cells, listed cells and detected cells in 38.331 are also applicable for E-UTRAN measurement object(s).

Whenever the procedural specification, other than contained in sub-clause 5.5.2, refers to a field it concerns a field included in the *VarMeasConfig* unless explicitly stated otherwise i.e. only the measurement configuration procedure covers the direct UE action related to the received *measConfig*.

### 5.5.2 Measurement configuration

#### 5.5.2.1 General

The network applies the procedure as follows:

- to ensure that, whenever the UE has a *measConfig*, it includes a *measObject* for each serving frequency;

Editor’s Note: FFS How the procedure is used for CGI reporting.

The UE shall:

1> if the received *measConfig* includes the *measObjectToRemoveList*:

2> perform the measurement object removal procedure as specified in 5.5.2.4;

1> if the received *measConfig* includes the *measObjectToAddModList*:

2> perform the measurement object addition/modification procedure as specified in 5.5.2.5;

1> if the received *measConfig* includes the *reportConfigToRemoveList*:

2> perform the reporting configuration removal procedure as specified in 5.5.2.6;

1> if the received *measConfig* includes the *reportConfigToAddModList*:

2> perform the reporting configuration addition/modification procedure as specified in 5.5.2.7;

1> if the received *measConfig* includes the *measIdToRemoveList*:

2> perform the measurement identity removal procedure as specified in 5.5.2.2;

1> if the received *measConfig* includes the *measIdToAddModList*:

2> perform the measurement identity addition/modification procedure as specified in 5.5.2.3;

1> if the received *measConfig* includes the *measGapConfig*:

2> perform the measurement gap configuration procedure as specified in 5.5.2.9;

1> if the received *measConfig* includes the *s-MeasureConfig*:

2> if *s-MeasureConfig* is set to *ssb-RSRP*, set parameter *ssb-RSRP* of *s-MeasureConfig* within *VarMeasConfig* to the lowest value of the RSRP ranges indicated by the received value of *s-MeasureConfig;*

2> else, set parameter *csi-RSRP* of *s-MeasureConfig* within *VarMeasConfig* to the lowest value of the RSRP ranges indicated by the received value of *s-MeasureConfig*;

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether we can simplify the procedural text and avoid using *VarMeasConfig*.

#### 5.5.2.2 Measurement identity removal

The UE shall:

1> for each *measId* included in the received *measIdToRemoveList* that is part of the current UE configuration in *VarMeasConfig*:

2> remove the entry with the matching *measId* from the *measIdList* within the *VarMeasConfig*;

2> remove the measurement reporting entry for this *measId* from the *VarMeasReportList*, if included;

2> stop the periodical reporting timer if running and reset the associated information (e.g. *timeToTrigger*) for this *measId*;

NOTE: The UE does not consider the message as erroneous if the *measIdToRemoveList* includes any *measId* value that is not part of the current UE configuration.

#### 5.5.2.3 Measurement identity addition/modification

The network applies the procedure as follows:

- configure a *measId* only if the corresponding measurement object, the corresponding reporting configuration and the corresponding quantity configuration, are configured;

The UE shall:

1> for each *measId* included in the received *measIdToAddModList*:

2> if an entry with the matching *measId* exists in the *measIdList* within the *VarMeasConfig*:

3> replace the entry with the value received for this *measId*;

2> else:

3> add a new entry for this *measId* within the *VarMeasConfig*;

2> remove the measurement reporting entry for this *measId* from the *VarMeasReportList*, if included;

2> stop the periodical reporting timer and reset the associated information (e.g. *timeToTrigger*) for this *measId*;

#### 5.5.2.4 Measurement object removal

The UE shall:

1> for each *measObjectId* included in the received *measObjectToRemoveList* that is part of *measObjectList* in *VarMeasConfig*:

2> remove the entry with the matching *measObjectId* from the *measObjectList* within the *VarMeasConfig*;

2> remove all *measId* associated with this *measObjectId* from the *measIdList* within the *VarMeasConfig*, if any;

2> if a *measId* is removed from the *measIdList*:

3> remove the measurement reporting entry for this *measId* from the *VarMeasReportList*, if included;

3> stop the periodical reporting timer and reset the associated information (e.g. *timeToTrigger*) for this *measId*;

NOTE: The UE does not consider the message as erroneous if the *measObjectToRemoveList* includes any *measObjectId* value that is not part of the current UE configuration.

#### 5.5.2.5 Measurement object addition/modification

The UE shall:

1> for each *measObjectId* included in the received *measObjectToAddModList*:

2> if an entry with the matching *measObjectId* exists in the *measObjectList* within the *VarMeasConfig*, for this entry:

3> reconfigure the entry with the value received for this *measObject*, except for the fields *cellsToAddModList, blackCellsToAddModList*, *whiteCellsToAddModList*, *cellsToRemoveList,* *blackCellsToRemoveList*, *whiteCellsToRemoveList, absThreshSS-BlocksConsolidation,* *absThreshCSI-RS-Consolidation, nroSS-BlocksToAverage,* *nroCSI-RS-ResourcesToAverage*;

Editor’s Note: FFS: Exceptions in handling *measObject* modification for other fields e.g. cells to add/remove from current cell list, measurement configuration for NR-SS and/or CSI-RS.

3> if the received *measObject* includes the *cellsToRemoveList*:

4> for each *cellIndex* included in the *cellsToRemoveList*:

5> remove the entry with the matching *cellIndex* from the *cellsToAddModList*;

3> if the received *measObject* includes the *cellsToAddModList*:

4> for each *cellIndex* value included in the *cellsToAddModList*:

5> if an entry with the matching *cellIndex* exists in the *cellsToAddModList*:

6> replace the entry with the value received for this *cellIndex*;

5> else:

6> add a new entry for the received *cellIndex* to the *cellsToAddModList*;

3> if the received *measObject* includes the *blackCellsToRemoveList*:

4> for each *cellIndex* included in the *blackCellsToRemoveList*:

5> remove the entry with the matching *cellIndex* from the *blackCellsToAddModList*;

3> if the received *measObject* includes the *blackCellsToAddModList*:

4> for each *cellIndex* included in the *blackCellsToAddModList*:

5> if an entry with the matching *cellIndex* is included in the *blackCellsToAddModList*:

6> replace the entry with the value received for this *cellIndex*;

5> else:

6> add a new entry for the received *cellIndex* to the *blackCellsToAddModList*;

3> if the received *measObject* includes the *whiteCellsToRemoveList*:

4> for each *cellIndex* included in the *whiteCellsToRemoveList*:

5> remove the entry with the matching *cellIndex* from the *whiteCellsToAddModList*;

3> if the received *measObject* includes the *whiteCellsToAddModList*:

4> for each *cellIndex* included in the *whiteCellsToAddModList*:

5> if an entry with the matching *cellIndex* is included in the *whiteCellsToAddModList*:

6> replace the entry with the value received for this *cellIndex*;

5> else:

6> add a new entry for the received *cellIndex* to the *whiteCellsToAddModList*;

3> for each *measId* associated with this *measObjectId* in the *measIdList* within the *VarMeasConfig*, if any:

4> remove the measurement reporting entry for this *measId* from the *VarMeasReportList*, if included;

4> stop the periodical reporting timer and reset the associated information (e.g. *timeToTrigger*) for this *measId*;

2> else:

3> add a new entry for the received *measObject* to the *measObjectList* within *VarMeasConfig*.

Editor’s Note: FFS How cell indexes are encoded e.g. cell index range.

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether the UE should delete a measurement reporting entry based on one RS type (e.g. SS/PBCH block), stop timers and reset variables (e.g. *timeToTrigger*) when parameters associated to another RS type are modified in *measObject*.

#### 5.5.2.6 Reporting configuration removal

The UE shall:

1> for each *reportConfigId* included in the received *reportConfigToRemoveList* that is part of the current UE configuration in *VarMeasConfig*:

2> remove the entry with the matching *reportConfigId* from the *reportConfigList* within the *VarMeasConfig*;

2> remove all measId associated with the *reportConfigId* from the *measIdList* within the *VarMeasConfig*, if any;

2> if a measId is removed from the *measIdList*:

3> remove the measurement reporting entry for this *measId* from the *VarMeasReportList*, if included;

3> stop the periodical reporting timer and reset the associated information (e.g. *timeToTrigger*) for this *measId*;

NOTE: The UE does not consider the message as erroneous if the *reportConfigToRemoveList* includes any reportConfigId value that is not part of the current UE configuration.

#### 5.5.2.7 Reporting configuration addition/modification

The UE shall:

1> for each *reportConfigId* included in the received *reportConfigToAddModList*:

2> if an entry with the matching *reportConfigId* exists in the *reportConfigList* within the *VarMeasConfig*, for this entry:

3> reconfigure the entry with the value received for this *reportConfig*;

3> for each *measId* associated with this *reportConfigId* included in the *measIdList* within the *VarMeasConfig*, if any:

4> remove the measurement reporting entry for this *measId* from the *VarMeasReportList*, if included;

4> stop the periodical reporting timer and reset the associated information (e.g. *timeToTrigger*) for this *measId*;

2> else:

3> add a new entry for the received reportConfig to the *reportConfigList* within the *VarMeasConfig*;

#### 5.5.2.8 Quantity configuration

The UE shall:

1> for each RAT for which the received *quantityConfig* includes parameter(s):

2> set the corresponding parameter(s) in *quantityConfig* within *VarMeasConfig* to the value of the received *quantityConfig* parameter(s);

1> for each *measId* included in the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig*:

2> remove the measurement reporting entry for this measId from the *VarMeasReportList*, if included;

2> stop the periodical reporting timer and reset the associated information (e.g. *timeToTrigger*) for this *measId*;

#### 5.5.2.9 Measurement gap configuration

Editor’s Note: FFS How measurement gaps are configured.

Editor’s Note: FFS how to capture the e.g. following agreement: For the independent gap case where UE is able to apply a different gap pattern for LTE/FR1 and FR2: a NR RRC configures a measurement gap configuration for FR2.

#### 5.5.2.10 Reference signal measurement timing configuration

Editor’s Note: FFS How SS/PBCH block measurement timing is configured.

### 5.5.3 Performing measurements

#### 5.5.3.1 General

An RRC\_CONNECTED UE shall derive cell measurement results by measuring one or multiple beams associated per cell as configured by the network, as described in 5.5.3.3. For all cell measurement results in RRC\_CONNECTED the UE applies the layer 3 filtering as specified in 5.5.3.2, before using the measured results for evaluation of reporting criteria and measurement reporting. For cell measurements, the network can configure RSRP, RSRQ or SINR as trigger quantity. Reporting quantities can be the same as trigger quantity or combinations of quantities (i.e. RSRP and RSRQ; RSRP and SINR; RSRQ and SINR; RSRP, RSRQ and SINR).

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether multiple quantities and be configured as trigger quantities, e.g. RSRP and RSRQ; RSRP and SINR; RSRQ and SINR; RSRP, RSRQ and SINR.

The network may also configure the UE to report measurement information per beam (which can either be measurement results per beam with respective beam identifier(s) or only beam identifier(s)), derived as described in 5.5.3.3. If beam measurement information is configured to be included in measurement reports, the UE applies the layer 3 beam filtering as specified in 5.5.3.2. On the other hand, the exact layer 1 filtering of beam measurements used to derive cell measurement results is implementation dependent.

The UE shall:

1> whenever the UE has a *measConfig*, perform RSRP and RSRQ measurements for each serving cell as follows:

2> if at least one *measId* included in the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig* contains an *rsType* set to *ssb*:

3> if at least one *measId* included in the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig* contains a *reportQuantityRsIndexes*:

4> derive layer 3 filtered RSRP and RSRQ per beam for the serving cell based on SS/PBCH block, as described in 5.5.3.3;

3> derive serving cell measurement results based on SS/PBCH block, as described in 5.5.3.3;

2> if at least one *measId* included in the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig* contains an *rsType* set to *csi-rs*:

3> if at least one *measId* included in the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig* contains a *reportQuantityRsIndexes*:

4> derive layer 3 filtered RSRP and RSRQ per beam for the serving cell based on CSI-RS, as described in 5.5.3.3;

3> derive serving cell measurement results based on CSI-RS, as described in 5.5.3.3;

1> if at least one *measId* included in the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig* contains SINR as trigger quantity and/or reporting quantity:

2> if the associated *reportConfig* contains *rsType* set to *ssb*:

3> if the *measId* contains a *reportQuantityRsIndexes*:

4> derive layer 3 filtered SINR per beam for the serving cell based on SS/PBCH block, as described in 5.5.3.3;

3> derive serving cell SINR based on SS/PBCH block, as described in 5.5.3.3;

2> if the associated *reportConfig* contains *rsType* set to *csi-rs*:

3> if the *measId* contains a *reportQuantityRsIndexes*:

4> derive layer 3 filtered SINR per beam for the serving cell based on CSI-RS, as described in 5.5.3.3;

3> derive serving cell SINR based on CSI-RS, as described in 5.5.3.3;

1> for each *measId* included in the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig*:

2> if the *reportType* for the associated *reportConfig* is not set to *reportCGI*:

3> if a measurement gap configuration is setup, or

3> if the UE does not require measurement gaps to perform the concerned measurements:

4> if *s-MeasureConfig* is not configured, or

4> if *s-MeasureConfig* is set to *ssb-RSRP* and the PCell RSRP based on SS/PBCH block, after layer 3 filtering, is lower than *ssb-RSRP* or,

4> if *s-MeasureConfig* is set to *csi-RSRP* and the PCell RSRP based on CSI-RS, after layer 3 filtering, is lower than *csi-RSRP* :

5> if the *measObject* is associated to NR and the *rsType* is set to *csi-rs*:

6> if *reportQuantityRsIndexes* for the associated *reportConfig* is configured:

7> derive layer 3 filtered beam measurements only based on CSI-RS for each measurement quantity indicated in *reportQuantityRsIndexes*, as described in 5.5.3.3;

6> derive cell measurement results based on CSI-RS for each trigger quantity and each measurement quantity indicated in *reportQuantityCell* using parameters from the associated *measObject*, as described in 5.5.3.3;

5> if the *measObject* is associated to NR and the *rsType* is set to *ssb*:

6> if *reportQuantityRsIndexes* for the associated *reportConfig* is configured:

7> derive layer 3 beam measurements only based on SS/PBCH block for each measurement quantity indicated in *reportQuantityRsIndexes*, as described in 5.5.3.3;

6> derive cell measurement results based on SS/PBCH block for each trigger quantity and each measurement quantity indicated in *reportQuantityCell* using parameters from the associated *measObject*, as described in 5.5.3.3;

5> if the *measObject* is associated to E-UTRA:

6> perform the corresponding measurements associated to neighbouring cells on the frequencies indicated in the concerned *measObject*;

2> perform the evaluation of reporting criteria as specified in 5.5.4.

#### 5.5.3.2 Layer 3 filtering

The UE shall:

1> for each cell measurement quantity and for each beam measurement quantity that the UE performs measurements according to 5.5.3.1:

2> filter the measured result, before using for evaluation of reporting criteria or for measurement reporting, by the following formula:



where

***Mn*** is the latest received measurement result from the physical layer;

***Fn***is the updated filtered measurement result, that is used for evaluation of reporting criteria or for measurement reporting;

***Fn-1*** is the old filtered measurement result, where ***F0*** is set to ***M1*** when the first measurement result from the physical layer is received; and

***a*** = 1/2(***k***/4), where ***k*** is the *filterCoefficient* for the corresponding measurement quantity received by the *quantityConfig*;

2> adapt the filter such that the time characteristics of the filter are preserved at different input rates, observing that the *filterCoefficient* *k* assumes a sample rate equal to X ms;

Editor’s Note: FFS Exact value of the sampling rate (i.e. X) for layer 3 filtering.

NOTE 1: If ***k*** is set to 0, no layer 3 filtering is applicable.

NOTE 2: The filtering is performed in the same domain as used for evaluation of reporting criteria or for measurement reporting, i.e., logarithmic filtering for logarithmic measurements.

NOTE 3: The filter input rate is implementation dependent, to fulfil the performance requirements set in [FFS]. For further details about the physical layer measurements, see TS 38.133 [FFS].

#### 5.5.3.3 Derivation of measurement results

The network may configure the UE to perform RSRP, RSRQ and SINR measurement results per cell associated to NR carrier frequencies based on parameters configured in the *measObject* (e.g. maximum number of beams to be averaged and beam consolidation thresholds) and in the *reportConfig* (*rsType* to be measured, SS/PBCH block or CSI-RS).

The UE shall:

1> for each cell measurement quantity to be derived based on SS/PBCH block:

2> if *nroSS-BlocksToAverage* in the associated *measObject* is not configured; or

2> if *absThreshSS-BlocksConsolidation* in the associated *measObject* is not configured; or

2> if the highest beam measurement quantity value is below *absThreshSS-BlocksConsolidation*:

3> derive each cell measurement quantity based on SS/PBCH block as the highest beam measurement quantity value, where each beam measurement quantity is described in TS 38.215 [9];

2> else:

3> derive each cell measurement quantity based on SS/PBCH block as the linear average of the power values of the highest beam measurement quantity values above *absThreshSS-BlocksConsolidation* where the total number of averaged beams shall not exceed *nrofSS-BlocksToAverage*;

1> for each cell measurement quantity to be derived based on CSI-RS:

2> consider a CSI-RS resource on the associated frequency to be applicable for deriving RSRP when the concerned CSI-RS resource is included in the *csi-rs-ResourceConfigMobility* with the corresponding *cellId* and *CSI-RS-ResourceId-RRM* within the *VarMeasConfig* for this *measId*;

2> if *nrofCSI-RS-ResourcesToAverage* in the associated *measObject* is not configured; or

2> if *absThreshCSI-RS-Consolidation* in the associated *measObject* is not configured; or

2> if the highest beam measurement quantity value is below *absThreshCSI-RS-Consolidation*:

3> derive each cell measurement quantity based on CSI-RS as the highest beam measurement quantity value, where each beam measurement quantity is described in TS 38.215 [9];

2> else:

3> derive each cell measurement quantity based on CSI-RS as the linear average of the power values of the highest beam measurement quantity values above *absThreshCSI-RS-Consolidation* where the total number of averaged beams shall not exceed *nroCSI-RS-ResourcesToAverage*;

The network can configure the UE to perform RSRP, RSRQ and SINR measurement results per beam based on parameters configured in the *measObject* and in the *reportConfig*. If beam measurement information is configured to be reported, beam measurement should be derived as follows.

The UE shall:

1> for each layer 3 beam filtered measurement quantity to be derived based on SS/PBCH block;

2> derive each configured beam measurement quantity based on SS/PBCH block as described in TS 38.215[9], and apply layer 3 beam filtering as described in 5.5.3.2;

1> for each layer 3 beam filtered measurement quantity to be derived based on CSI-RS;

2> derive each configured beam measurement quantity based on CSI-RS as described in TS 38.215 [9], and apply layer 3 beam filtering as described in 5.5.3.2;

### 5.5.4 Measurement report triggering

#### 5.5.4.1 General

If security has been activated successfully, the UE shall:

1> for each *measId* included in the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig*:

2> if the corresponding *reportConfig* does not include a *reportType* set to *reportCGI*:

3> if the corresponding *measObject* concerns NR;

4> if the eventA1 or eventA2 is configured in the corresponding *reportConfig*:

5> consider only the serving cell to be applicable;

4> else:

5> if *useWhiteCellList* is set to TRUE:

6> consider any neighbouring cell detected on the associated frequency to be applicable when the concerned cell is included in the *whiteCellsToAddModList* defined within the *VarMeasConfig* for this measId;

5> else:

6> consider any neighbouring cell detected on the associated frequency to be applicable when the concerned cell is not included in the *blackCellsToAddModList* defined within the *VarMeasConfig* for this measId;

5> for events involving a serving cell on one frequency and neighbours on another frequency, consider the serving cell on the other frequency as a neighbouring cell;

2> if the *reportType* is set to *eventTriggered* and if the entry condition applicable for this event, i.e. the event corresponding with the *eventId* of the corresponding *reportConfig* within *VarMeasConfig*, is fulfilled for one or more applicable cells for all measurements after layer 3 filtering taken during *timeToTrigger* defined for this event within the *VarMeasConfig*, while the *VarMeasReportList* does not include an measurement reporting entry for this *measId* (a first cell triggers the event):

3> include a measurement reporting entry within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*;

3> set the *numberOfReportsSent* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId* to 0;

3> include the concerned cell(s) in the *cellsTriggeredList* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*;

3> initiate the measurement reporting procedure, as specified in 5.5.5;

2> if the *reportType* is set to *eventTriggered* and if the entry condition applicable for this event, i.e. the event corresponding with the *eventId* of the corresponding *reportConfig* within *VarMeasConfig*, is fulfilled for one or more applicable cells not included in the *cellsTriggeredList* for all measurements after layer 3 filtering taken during *timeToTrigger* defined for this event within the *VarMeasConfig* (a subsequent cell triggers the event):

3> set the *numberOfReportsSent* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId* to 0;

3> include the concerned cell(s) in the *cellsTriggeredList* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*;

3> initiate the measurement reporting procedure, as specified in 5.5.5;

2> if the *reportType* is set to *eventTriggered* and if the leaving condition applicable for this event is fulfilled for one or more of the cells included in the *cellsTriggeredList* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId* for all measurements after layer 3 filtering taken during *timeToTrigger* defined within the *VarMeasConfig* for this event:

3> remove the concerned cell(s) in the *cellsTriggeredList* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*;

3> if *reportOnLeave* is set to *TRUE* for the corresponding reporting configuration:

4> initiate the measurement reporting procedure, as specified in 5.5.5;

3> if the *cellsTriggeredList* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId* is empty:

4> remove the measurement reporting entry within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*;

4> stop the periodical reporting timer for this *measId*, if running;

2> if *reportType* is set to *periodical* and if a (first) measurement result is available:

3> include a measurement reporting entry within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*;

3> set the *numberOfReportsSent* defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId* to 0;

4> if the *reportAmount* exceeds 1:

5> initiate the measurement reporting procedure, as specified in 5.5.5, immediately after the quantity to be reported becomes available for the PCell;

4> else (i.e. the *reportAmount* is equal to 1):

5> initiate the measurement reporting procedure, as specified in 5.5.5, immediately after the quantity to be reported becomes available for the PCell and for the strongest cell among the applicable cells;

2> upon expiry of the periodical reporting timer for this *measId*:

3> initiate the measurement reporting procedure, as specified in 5.5.5;

#### 5.5.4.2 Event A1 (Serving becomes better than threshold)

The UE shall:

1> consider the entering condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A1-1, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> consider the leaving condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A1-2, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> for this measurement, consider the primary or secondary cell that is configured on the frequency indicated in the associated *measObjectNR* to be the serving cell;

Inequality A1-1 (Entering condition)



Inequality A1-2 (Leaving condition)



The variables in the formula are defined as follows:

***Ms*** is the measurement result of the serving cell, not taking into account any offsets.

***Hys*** is the hysteresis parameter for this event (i.e. *hysteresis* as defined within *reportConfigEUTRA* for this event).

***Thresh*** is the threshold parameter for this event (i.e. *a1-Threshold* as defined within *reportConfigEUTRA* for this event).

***Ms*** is expressed in dBm in case of RSRP, or in dB in case of RSRQ and RS-SINR.

***Hys is*** expressed in dB.

***Thresh*** is expressed in the same unit as ***Ms***.

#### 5.5.4.3 Event A2 (Serving becomes worse than threshold)

The UE shall:

1> consider the entering condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A2-1, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> consider the leaving condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A2-2, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> for this measurement, consider the primary or secondary cell that is configured on the frequency indicated in the associated *measObjectNR* to be the serving cell;

Inequality A2-1 (Entering condition)



Inequality A2-2 (Leaving condition)



The variables in the formula are defined as follows:

***Ms*** is the measurement result of the serving cell, not taking into account any offsets.

***Hys*** is the hysteresis parameter for this event (i.e. *hysteresis* as defined within *reportConfigEUTRA* for this event).

***Thresh*** is the threshold parameter for this event (i.e. *a2-Threshold* as defined within *reportConfigEUTRA* for this event).

***Ms*** is expressed in dBm in case of RSRP, or in dB in case of RSRQ and RS-SINR.

***Hys*** is expressed in dB.

***Thresh*** is expressed in the same unit as ***Ms***.

#### 5.5.4.4 Event A3 (Neighbour becomes offset better than PCell/PSCell)

The UE shall:

1> consider the entering condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A3-1, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> consider the leaving condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A3-2, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> if *usePSCell* of the corresponding *reportConfig* is set to *true*:

2> use the PSCell for *Mp*, *Ofp and Ocp*;

1> else:

2> use the PCell for *Mp*, *Ofp and Ocp*;

NOTE The cell(s) that triggers the event is on the frequency indicated in the associated *measObject* which may be different from the frequency used by the PCell/PSCell.

Inequality A3-1 (Entering condition)



Inequality A3-2 (Leaving condition)



The variables in the formula are defined as follows:

***Mn*** is the measurement result of the neighbouring cell, not taking into account any offsets.

***Ofn*** is the frequency specific offset of the frequency of the neighbour cell (i.e. *offsetFreq* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the frequency of the neighbour cell).

***Ocn*** is the cell specific offset of the neighbour cell (i.e. *cellIndividualOffset* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the frequency of the neighbour cell), and set to zero if not configured for the neighbour cell.

***Mp*** is the measurement result of the PCell/PSCell, not taking into account any offsets.

***Ofp*** is the frequency specific offset of the frequency of the PCell/PSCell (i.e. *offsetFreq* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the frequency of the PCell/PSCell).

***Ocp*** is the cell specific offset of the PCell/PSCell (i.e. *cellIndividualOffset* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the frequency of the PCell/PSCell), and is set to zero if not configured for the PCell/PSCell.

***Hys*** is the hysteresis parameter for this event (i.e. *hysteresis* as defined within *reportConfigNR* for this event).

***Off*** is the offset parameter for this event (i.e. *a3-Offset* as defined within *reportConfigNR* for this event).

***Mn, Mp*** are expressed in dBm in case of RSRP, or in dB in case of RSRQ and RS-SINR.

***Ofn***, ***Ocn***, ***Ofp***, ***Ocp***, ***Hys***, ***Off*** are expressed in dB.

#### 5.5.4.5 Event A4 (Neighbour becomes better than threshold)

The UE shall:

1> consider the entering condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A4-1, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> consider the leaving condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A4-2, as specified below, is fulfilled;

Inequality A4-1 (Entering condition)



Inequality A4-2 (Leaving condition)



The variables in the formula are defined as follows:

***Mn*** is the measurement result of the neighbouring cell, not taking into account any offsets.

***Ofn*** is the frequency specific offset of the frequency of the neighbour cell (i.e. *offsetFreq* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the frequency of the neighbour cell).

***Ocn*** is the cell specific offset of the neighbour cell (i.e. *cellIndividualOffset* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the frequency of the neighbour cell), and set to zero if not configured for the neighbour cell.

***Hys*** is the hysteresis parameter for this event (i.e. *hysteresis* as defined within *reportConfigNR* for this event).

***Thresh*** is the threshold parameter for this event (i.e. *a4-Threshold* as defined within *reportConfigNR* for this event).

***Mn*** is expressed in dBm in case of RSRP, or in dB in case of RSRQ and RS-SINR.

***Ofn, Ocn, Hys*** are expressed in dB.

***Thresh*** is expressed in the same unit as ***Mn***.

#### 5.5.4.6 Event A5 (PCell/PSCell becomes worse than threshold1 and neighbour becomes better than threshold2)

The UE shall:

1> consider the entering condition for this event to be satisfied when both condition A5-1 and condition A5-2, as specified below, are fulfilled;

1> consider the leaving condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A5-3 or condition A5-4, i.e. at least one of the two, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> if *usePSCell* of the corresponding *reportConfig* is set to *true*:

2> use the PSCell for *Mp*;

1> else:

2> use the PCell for *Mp*;

NOTE: The cell(s) that triggers the event is on the frequency indicated in the associated *measObject* which may be different from the frequency used by the PCell/PSCell.

Inequality A5-1 (Entering condition 1)



Inequality A5-2 (Entering condition 2)



Inequality A5-3 (Leaving condition 1)



Inequality A5-4 (Leaving condition 2)



The variables in the formula are defined as follows:

***Mp*** is the measurement result of the PCell/PSCell, not taking into account any offsets.

***Mn*** is the measurement result of the neighbouring cell, not taking into account any offsets.

***Ofn*** is the frequency specific offset of the frequency of the neighbour cell (i.e. *offsetFreq* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the frequency of the neighbour cell).

***Ocn*** is the cell specific offset of the neighbour cell (i.e. *cellIndividualOffset* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the frequency of the neighbour cell), and set to zero if not configured for the neighbour cell.

***Hys*** is the hysteresis parameter for this event (i.e. *hysteresis* as defined within *reportConfigNR* for this event).

***Thresh1*** is the threshold parameter for this event (i.e. *a5-Threshold1* as defined within *reportConfigNR* for this event).

***Thresh2*** is the threshold parameter for this event (i.e. *a5-Threshold2* as defined within *reportConfigNR* for this event).

***Mn, Mp*** are expressed in dBm in case of RSRP, or in dB in case of RSRQ and RS-SINR.

***Ofn, Ocn, Hys*** are expressed in dB.

***Thresh1*** is expressed in the same unit as ***Mp***.

***Thresh2*** is expressed in the same unit as ***Mn***.

#### 5.5.4.7 Event A6 (Neighbour becomes offset better than SCell)

The UE shall:

1> consider the entering condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A6-1, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> consider the leaving condition for this event to be satisfied when condition A6-2, as specified below, is fulfilled;

1> for this measurement, consider the (secondary) cell that is configured on the frequency indicated in the associated *measObjectNR* to be the serving cell;

NOTE: The neighbour(s) is on the same frequency as the SCell i.e. both are on the frequency indicated in the associated *measObject*.

Inequality A6-1 (Entering condition)



Inequality A6-2 (Leaving condition)



The variables in the formula are defined as follows:

***Mn*** is the measurement result of the neighbouring cell, not taking into account any offsets.

***Ocn*** is the cell specific offset of the neighbour cell (i.e. *cellIndividualOffset* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the frequency of the neighbour cell), and set to zero if not configured for the neighbour cell.

***Ms*** is the measurement result of the serving cell, not taking into account any offsets.

***Ocs*** is the cell specific offset of the serving cell (i.e. *cellIndividualOffset* as defined within *measObjectNR* corresponding to the serving frequency), and is set to zero if not configured for the serving cell.

***Hys*** is the hysteresis parameter for this event (i.e. *hysteresis* as defined within *reportConfigNR* for this event).

***Off*** is the offset parameter for this event (i.e. *a6-Offset* as defined within *reportConfigNR* for this event).

***Mn, Ms*** are expressed in dBm in case of RSRP, or in dB in case of RSRQ and RS-SINR.

***Ocn, Ocs, Hys, Off*** are expressed in dB.

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether multiple trigger quantities is supported in Rel-15.

Editor’s Note: FFS Details of B1/B2 inter-RAT events and periodical reporting for LTE measurements.

### 5.5.5 Measurement reporting

#### 5.5.5.1 General



Figure 5.5.5-1: Measurement reporting

The purpose of this procedure is to transfer measurement results from the UE to the network. The UE shall initiate this procedure only after successful security activation.

For the *measId* for which the measurement reporting procedure was triggered, the UE shall set the *measResults* within the *MeasurementReport* message as follows:

1> set the *measId* to the measurement identity that triggered the measurement reporting;

1> set the *measResultServingCell* within *measResultServingFreqList* to include RSRP, RSRQ and the available SINR for each configured serving cell derived based on the *rsType* indicated in the associated *reportConfig*;

1> in EN-DC, set the *measResultServingCell* within *measResultServingFreqListmeasResultServingFreqList* to include for each NR SCell that is configured, if any, the *servFreqId*;

1> if the *reportConfig* associated with the *measId* that triggered the measurement reporting includes *reportQuantityRsIndexes*:

2> for each configured serving cell, include beam measurement information according to the associated *reportConfig* as described in 5.5.5.2;

1> if the *reportConfig* associated with the *measId* that triggered the measurement reporting includes *reportAddNeighMeas*:

2> for each serving frequency for which *measObjectId* is referencedin the *measIdList*, other than the frequency corresponding with the *measId* that triggered the measurement reporting:

3> set the *measResultBestNeighCell* within *measResultServingFreqListmeasResultServingFreqList* to include the *physCellId* and the available measurement quantities and *rsType* indicated in *reportConfig* of the best non-serving cell on the concerned serving frequency;

3> if the *reportConfig* associated with the *measId* that triggered the measurement reporting includes *reportQuantityRsIndexes:*

4> for each best non-serving cell on the concerned serving frequency, include beam measurement information according to the associated *reportConfig* as described in 5.5.5.2;

1> if there is at least one applicable neighbouring cell to report:

2> set the *measResultNeighCells* to include the best neighbouring cells up to *maxReportCells* in accordance with the following:

3> if the *reportType* is set to *eventTriggered*:

4> include the cells included in the *cellsTriggeredList* as defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*;

3> else:

4> include the applicable cells for which the new measurement results became available since the last periodical reporting or since the measurement was initiated or reset;

4> if *reportQuantityRsIndexes* is configured, include beam measurement information as described in 5.5.5.2;

3> for each cell that is included in the *measResultNeighCells*, include the *physCellId*;

3> if the *reportType* is set to *eventTriggered*;

4> for each included cell, include the layer 3 filtered measured results in accordance with the *reportConfig* for this *measId*, ordered as follows:

5> if the *measObject* associated with this *measId* concerns NR:

6> if *rsType* in the associated *reportConfig* is set to *ssb*:

7> set *resultsSSB-Cell* within the *measResult* to include the SS/PBCH block based quantity(ies) indicated in the *reportQuantityCell* within the concerned *reportConfig*, in order of decreasing trigger quantity, i.e. the best cell is included first;

8> if *reportQuantityRsIndexes* is configured, include beam measurement information as described in 5.5.5.2;

6> else if *rsType* in the associated *reportConfig* is set to *csi-rs*:

7> set *resultsCSI-RS-Cell* within the *measResult* to include the CSI-RS based quantity(ies) indicated in the *reportQuantityCell* within the concerned *reportConfig*, in order of decreasing trigger quantity, i.e. the best cell is included first;

8> if *reportQuantityRsIndexes* is configured, include beam measurement information as described in 5.5.5.2;

1> increment the *numberOfReportsSent* as defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this measId by 1;

1> stop the periodical reporting timer, if running;

1> if the *numberOfReportsSent* as defined within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId* is less than the *reportAmount* as defined within the corresponding *reportConfig* for this *measId*:

2> start the periodical reporting timer with the value of *reportInterval* as defined within the corresponding *reportConfig* for this *measId*;

1> else:

2> if the *reportType* is set to *periodical*:

3> remove the entry within the *VarMeasReportList* for this *measId*;

3> remove this *measId* from the *measIdList* within *VarMeasConfig*;

1> submit the *MeasurementReport* message to lower layers for transmission, upon which the procedure ends;

Editor’s Note: Capture that NR MeasurementReport is sent over SRB3 whenever SRB3 is available. FFS.

#### 5.5.5.2 Reporting of beam measurement information

For beam measurement information to be included in a measurement report the UE shall:

1> set *rsIndexResults* to include up to *maxNrofRsIndexesToReport* beam indexes in order of decreasing quantity as follows:

2> if the measurement information to be included is based on SS/PBCH block:

3> include within *resultsSSB-Indexes* the index associated to the best beam for that SS/PBCH block quantity and the remaining beams whose quantity is above *absThreshSS-BlocksConsolidation* defined in the *VarMeasConfig* for the corresponding *measObject*;

3> if *onlyReportBeamIds* is not configured, include the SS/PBCH based measurement results associated to each beam index;

2> else if the beam measurement information to be included is based on CSI-RS:

3> include within *resultsCSI-RS-Indexes* the index associated to the best beam for that CSI-RS quantity and the remaining beams whose quantity is above *absThreshCSI-RS-Consolidation* defined in the *VarMeasConfig* for the corresponding *measObject*;

3> if *onlyReportBeamIds* is not configured, include the CSI-RS based measurement results associated to each beam index;

Editor’s Note: FFS which quantity to use for ordering beam measurement results.

Editor’s Note: FFS Measurement relation actions during procedures such as handover and re-establishment

## 5.6 UE capabilities

### 5.6.1 UE capability transfer

#### 5.6.1.1 General

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018

5.6.1.2 Initiation

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

#### 5.6.1.3 Reception of the *UECapabilityEnquiry* by the UE

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

#### 5.6.1.4 Compilation of band combinations supported by the UE

The UE shall:

1> if includes *requestedFreqBandList*:

2> compile a list of band combinations, candidate for inclusion in the *UECapabilityInformation* message, only consisting of bands included in *requestedFreqBandList*, and prioritized in the order of *requestedFreBandList*, (i.e. first include remaining band combinations containing the first-listed band, then include remaining band combinations containing the second-listed band, and so on);

2> for each band combination included in the candidate list:

3> if it is regarded as a fallback band combination with the same capabilities of another band combination included in the list of candidates as specified in TS 38.306 [xx]:

4> remove the band combination from the list of candidates;

2> include all band combinations in the candidate list into *supportedBandCombination*;

1> else:

2> include all band combinations supported by the UE into *supportedBandCombination,* excluding fallback band combinations with the same capabilities of another band combination included in the list of band combinations supported by the UE.

#### 5.6.1.5 Compilation of baseband processing combinations supported by the UE

The UE shall:

1> for each band combination included in *supportedBandCombination*:

2> include the baseband processing combination supported for the band combination into *supportedBasebandProcessingCombination*, unless it is already included;

2> if there are the fallback baseband processing combinations of this baseband processing combination as specified in TS 38.306 [xx] for which supported baseband capabilities are different from this baseband processing combination:

3> include the fallback baseband processing combinations into *supportedBasebandProcessingCombination*.

## 5.7 Other

### 5.7.1 DL information transfer

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.7.2 UL information transfer

Editor’s Note: Targeted for completion in June 2018.

### 5.7.3 SCG failure information

#### 5.7.3.1 General



Figure 5.6.13.1-1: SCG failure information

The purpose of this procedure is to inform EUTRAN or NR MN about an SCG failure the UE has experienced i.e. SCG radio link failure, SCG change failure, SCG configuration failure for RRC message on SRB3, SCG integrity check failure and exceeding the maximum uplink transmission timing difference.

Editor’s Note: SCG failure considers the case of exceeding the maximum uplink transmission timing difference if RAN1 decides that EN-DC supports the synchronised operation case. FFS how to capture

Editor’s Note: FFS whether to include the handling of SCell Failure in CA duplication case in SCGfailureinformation procedure and whether to rename SCGfailureinformation.

#### 5.7.3.2 Initiation

A UE initiates the procedure to report SCG failures when SCG transmission is not suspended and when one of the following conditions is met:

1> upon detecting radio link failure for the SCG, in accordance with subclause 5.3.11.3;

1> upon reconfiguration with sync failure of the SCG, in accordance with subclause 5.3.5.9.3;

1> upon stopping uplink transmission towards the SCG’s SpCell due to exceeding the maximum uplink transmission timing difference, in accordance with subclause x.x.x of TS 38.133 [xx]FFS\_Ref.

Editor’s Note: FFS on RAN1 decision on powerControlMode;

1> upon SCG configuration failure, in accordance with subclause 5.3.5.9 9.2;

1> upon integrity check failure indication from SCG lower layers, in accordance with subclause 5.3.5.9.1;

Upon initiating the procedure, the UE shall:

1> suspend SCG transmission for all SRBs and DRBs;

1> reset SCG-MAC;

1> stop T304, if running;

1> if the UE is operating in EN-DC:

2> set *failureType* in accordance with subclause 5.7.3.3;

2> set the contents of *FailureReportSCG-ToOtherRAT* in accordance with subclause 5.7.3.4;

2> initiate transmission of the SCGFailureInformation message as specified in TS 36.331 [10, 5.6.13.3];

Editor’s Note: for EN-DC, transmission of SCGFailureInformation message is transmitted through LTE RRC entity. FFS how to capture.  
The section for transmission of SCGFailureInformation in NR RRC entity for SA is FFS\_Standalone.

#### 5.7.3.3 Failure type determination

Editor’s Note: FFS / TODO: Either use this section also for NR-DC or change section title (add “for EN-DC”)

The UE shall set the SCG failure type as follows:

1> if the UE initiates transmission of the *SCGFailureInformation* message to provide SCG radio link failure information:

2> set the *failureType* as the trigger for detecting SCG radio link failure;

1> else if the UE initiates transmission of the *SCGFailureInformation* message to provide reconfiguration with sync failure information for an SCG:

2> set the *failureType* as *scg-ChangeFailure*;

Editor’s Note: FFS whether to change scg-ChangeFailure to synchronousReconfigurationFailure-SCG

1> else if the UE initiates transmission of the *SCGFailureInformation* message due to exceeding maximum uplink transmission timing difference:

2> set the *failureType* as *maxUL-TimingDiff*;

1> else, if the UE initiates transmission of the *SCGFailureInformation* message due to SRB3 IP check failure:

2> set the *failureType* as *srb3-IntegrityFailure*;

1> else, if the UE initiates transmission of the *SCGFailureInformation* message due to Reconfiguration failure of NR RRC reconfiguration message:

2> set the *failureType* as *scg-reconfigFailure*;

Editor’s Note: FFS: whether to include *rrc-TransactionIdentifier* information.

#### 5.7.3.4 Setting the contents of *FailureReportSCG-ToOtherRAT*

The UE shall set the contents of the *FailureReportSCG-ToOtherRAT* as follows:

1> set the *measResultServingFreqListmeasResultServingFreqList* to include for each SCG cell that is configured by the SN to be measured, if any, within *measResultServingCellmeasResultServingCell* the quantities of the concerned SCell, if available, according to performance requirements in [FFS\_Ref];

1> for each SCG serving frequency included in *measResultServingFreqListmeasResultServingFreqList*, include within *measResultBestNeighServingCellmeasResultBestNeighServingCell* the *physCellId* and the quantities of the best non-serving cell, based on RSRP, on the concerned serving frequency;

1> set the *measResultNeighCells* to include the best measured cells on non-serving NR frequencies, ordered such that the best cell is listed first, and based on measurements collected up to the moment the UE detected the failure, and set its fields as follows;

2> if the UE was configured to perform measurements by the SN for one or more non-serving NR frequencies and measurement results are available, include the *measResultListNR*;

2> for each neighbour cell included:

3> include the optional fields that are available;

NOTE 2: The measured quantities are filtered by the L3 filter as configured in the mobility measurement configuration. The measurements are based on the time domain measurement resource restriction, if configured. Blacklisted cells are not required to be reported.

# 6 Protocol data units, formats and parameters (ASN.1)

## 6.1 General

### 6.1.1 Introduction

The contents of each RRC message is specified in sub-clause 6.2 using ASN.1 to specify the message syntax and using tables when needed to provide further detailed information about the fields specified in the message syntax. The syntax of the information elements that are defined as stand-alone abstract types is further specified in a similar manner in sub-clause 6.3.

### 6.1.2 Need codes for optional downlink fields

The need for fields to be present in a message or an abstract type, i.e., the ASN.1 fields that are specified as OPTIONAL in the abstract notation (ASN.1), is specified by means of comment text tags attached to the OPTIONAL statement in the abstract syntax. All comment text tags are available for use in the downlink direction only. The meaning of each tag is specified in table 6.1-1. For guidelines on the use of need codes, see Annex A.6.

Table 6.1-1: Meaning of abbreviations used to specify the need for fields to be present

| Abbreviation | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| Cond conditionTag  (Used in downlink only) | Conditionally present  A field for which the need is specified by means of conditions. For each conditionTag, the need is specified in a tabular form following the ASN.1 segment. In case, according to the conditions, a field is not present, the UE takes no action and where applicable shall continue to use the existing value (and/or the associated functionality) unless explicitly stated otherwise (e.g. in the conditional presence table or in the description of the field itself). |
| S | *Specified*  Used for (configuration) fields, whose field description or procedure **specifies** the UE behavior performed upon receiving a message with the field absent (and not if field description or procedure specifies the UE behavior when field is not configured). |
| M | *Maintain*  Used for (configuration) fields that are stored by the UE i.e. not one-shot. Upon receiving a message with the field absent, the UE maintains the current value. |
| N | *No action* (one-shot configuration that is not maintained)  Used for (configuration) fields that are not stored and whose presence causes a one-time action by the UE. Upon receiving message with the field absent, the UE takes no action. |
| R | *Release*  Used for (configuration) fields that are stored by the UE i.e. not one-shot. Upon receiving a message with the field absent, the UE releases the current value. |

## 6.2 RRC messages

### 6.2.1 General message structure

#### *– NR-RRC-Definitions*

This ASN.1 segment is the start of the NR RRC PDU definitions.

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-NR-RRC-DEFINITIONSSTART

NR-RRC-Definitions DEFINITIONS AUTOMATIC TAGS ::=

BEGIN

-- TAG-NR-RRC-DEFINITIONS-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### *– BCCH-BCH-Message*

The *BCCH-BCH-Message* class is the set of RRC messages that may be sent from the network to the UE via BCH on the BCCH logical channel.

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-BCCH-BCH-MESSAGE-START

BCCH-BCH-Message ::= SEQUENCE {

message BCCH-BCH-MessageType

}

BCCH-BCH-MessageType ::= CHOICE {

mib MIB,

messageClassExtension SEQUENCE {}

}

-- TAG-BCCH-BCH-MESSAGE-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### *– DL-DCCH-Message*

The *DL-DCCH-Message* class is the set of RRC messages that may be sent from the network to the UE on the downlink DCCH logical channel.

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-DL-DCCH-MESSAGE-START

DL-DCCH-Message ::= SEQUENCE {

message DL-DCCH-MessageType

}

DL-DCCH-MessageType ::= CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE {

rrcReconfiguration RRCReconfiguration,

spare15 NULL, spare14 NULL, spare13 NULL,

spare12 NULL, spare11 NULL, spare10 NULL,

spare9 NULL, spare8 NULL, spare7 NULL,

spare6 NULL, spare5 NULL, spare4 NULL,

spare3 NULL, spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

messageClassExtension SEQUENCE {}

}

-- TAG-DL-DCCH-MESSAGE-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### *– UL-DCCH-Message*

The *UL-DCCH-Message* class is the set of RRC messages that may be sent from the UE to the network on the uplink DCCH logical channel.

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-UL-DCCH-MESSAGE-START

UL-DCCH-Message ::= SEQUENCE {

message UL-DCCH-MessageType

}

UL-DCCH-MessageType ::= CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE {

measurementReport MeasurementReport,

rrcReconfigurationComplete RRCReconfigurationComplete,

spare14 NULL, spare13 NULL, spare12 NULL,

spare11 NULL, spare10 NULL, spare9 NULL,

spare8 NULL, spare7 NULL, spare6 NULL,

spare5 NULL, spare4 NULL, spare3 NULL,

spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

messageClassExtension SEQUENCE {}

}

-- TAG-UL-DCCH-MESSAGE-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

### 6.2.2 Message definitions

#### – *MIB*

The *MIB* includes the system information transmitted on BCH.

Signalling radio bearer: N/A

RLC-SAP: TM

Logical channel: BCCH

Direction: Network to UE

*MIB*

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MIB-START

MIB ::= SEQUENCE {

-- The 6 most significant bit (MSB) of the 10 bit System Frame Number. The 4 LSB of the SFN are conveyed in the PBCH transport block

-- as well but outside the MIB.

systemFrameNumber BIT STRING (SIZE (6)),

-- Subcarrier spacing for SIB1, Msg.2/4 for initial access and broadcast SI-messages.

-- If the UE acquires this MIB on a carrier frequency <6GHz, the values 15 and 30 kHz are applicable.

-- If the UE acquires this MIB on a carrier frequency >6GHz, the values 60 and 120 kHz are applicable.

subCarrierSpacingCommon ENUMERATED {scs15or60, scs30or120},

-- The frequency domain offset between SSB and the overall resource block grid in number of subcarriers. (See 38.211, section 7.4.3.1)

-- FFS: Whether and how a 5th bit (MSB) is conveyed in SSB-index-explicit for <6 GHz

ssb-SubcarrierOffset INTEGER (0..15),

-- Position of (first) DL DM-RS. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-DMRS-typeA-pos' (see 38.211, section 7.4.1.1.1)

dmrs-TypeA-Position ENUMERATED {pos2, pos3},

-- Determines a bandwidth for PDCCH/SIB, a common ControlResourceSet (CORESET) a common search space and necessary PDCCH parameters.

-- The codepoint "FFS\_RAN1" indicates that this cell does not provide SIB1 and that there is hence no common CORESET.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'RMSI-PDCCH-Config' (see FFS\_Specification, section FFS\_Section)

pdcch-ConfigSIB1 INTEGER (0..255),

-- Indicates that UE shall not camp on this cell

cellBarred ENUMERATED {barred, notBarred},

-- Indicates that intraFreqReselection is not allowed when cellBarred is set to barred.

intraFreqReselection ENUMERATED {allowed, notAllowed},

spare BIT STRING (SIZE (ffsValue))

}

-- TAG-MIB-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| *MIB* field descriptions |
| --- |
|  |

#### – *MeasurementReport*

The *MeasurementReport* message is used for the indication of measurement results.

Signalling radio bearer: SRB1, SRB3

RLC-SAP: AM

Logical channel: DCCH

Direction: UE to network

*MeasurementReport message*

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MEASUREMENTREPORT-START

MeasurementReport ::= SEQUENCE {

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

measurementReport MeasurementReport-IEs,

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

MeasurementReport-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

measResults MeasResults,

-- FFS

lateNonCriticalExtension OCTET STRING OPTIONAL,

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-MEASUREMENTREPORT-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *RRCReconfiguration*

The *RRCReconfiguration* message is the command to modify an RRC connection. It may convey information for measurement configuration, mobility control, radio resource configuration (including RBs, MAC main configuration and physical channel configuration) including any associated dedicated NAS information and security configuration.

Signalling radio bearer: SRB1 or SRB3

RLC-SAP: AM

Logical channel: DCCH

Direction: Network to UE

*RRCReconfiguration message*

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-RRCRECONFIGURATION-START

RRCReconfiguration ::= SEQUENCE {

rrc-TransactionIdentifier RRC-TransactionIdentifier,

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

rrcReconfiguration RRCReconfiguration-IEs,

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

RRCReconfiguration-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Configuration of Radio Bearers (DRBs, SRBs) including SDAP/PDCP.

-- In EN-DC this field may only be present if the RRCReconfiguration

-- is transmitted over SRB3.

radioBearerConfig RadioBearerConfig OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Configuration of master and secondary cell groups (Dual Connectivity):

masterCellGroupConfig CellGroupConfig OPTIONAL, -- Need M

secondaryCellGroupToAddModList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxSCellGroups)) OF CellGroupConfig OPTIONAL, -- Need M

secondaryCellGroupToReleaseList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxSCellGroups)) OF CellGroupId OPTIONAL, -- Need M

measConfig MeasConfig OPTIONAL, -- Need M

lateNonCriticalExtension OCTET STRING OPTIONAL,

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-RRCRECONFIGURATION-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| *RRCReconfiguration* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***FFS***  FFS. |

| Conditional presence | Explanation |
| --- | --- |
| *FFS* | FFS |

#### *– RRCReconfigurationComplete*

The *RRCReconfigurationComplete* message is used to confirm the successful completion of an RRC connection reconfiguration.

Signalling radio bearer: SRB1 or SRB3

RLC-SAP: AM

Logical channel: DCCH

Direction: UE to network

*RRCReconfigurationComplete message*

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-RRCRECONFIGURATIONCOMPLETE-START

RRCReconfigurationComplete ::= SEQUENCE {

rrc-TransactionIdentifier RRC-TransactionIdentifier,

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

rrcReconfigurationComplete RRCReconfigurationComplete-IEs,

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

RRCReconfigurationComplete-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS

lateNonCriticalExtension OCTET STRING OPTIONAL,

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-RRCRECONFIGURATIONCOMPLETE-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| *RRCReconfigurationComplete* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***FFS***  FFS |

#### – *SIB1*

Editor’s Note: Discuss whether to keep SIB1 for the December version. FFS

*SIB1* contains information relevant when evaluating if a UE is allowed to access a cell and defines the scheduling of other system information.It also contains radio resource configuration information that is common for all UEs.

Signalling radio bearer: N/A

RLC-SAP: TM

Logical channels: BCCH and BR-BCCH

Direction: Network to UE

*SIB1 message*

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SIB1-START

SIB1 ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS / TODO: Add other parameters.

-- Time domain positions of the transmitted SS-blocks in an SS-Burst-Set (see 38.213, section 4.1)

ssb-PositionsInBurst SEQUENCE {

-- Indicates the presence of the up to 8 SSBs in one group

inOneGroup BIT STRING (SIZE (8)),

-- For above 6 GHz: indicates which groups of SSBs is present

groupPresence BIT STRING (SIZE (8)) OPTIONAL -- Cond above6GHzOnly

},

-- The SSB periodicity in msec for the rate matching purpose (see 38.211, section [7.4.3.1])

ssb-PeriodicityServingCell ENUMERATED { ms5, ms10, ms20, ms40, ms80, ms160, spare1, spare2 },

-- TX power that the NW used for SSB transmission. The UE uses it to estimate the RA preamble TX power.

-- (see 38.213, section 7.4)

ss-PBCH-BlockPower INTEGER (-60..50),

uplinkConfigCommon UplinkConfigCommon OPTIONAL,

-- FFS: How to indicate the FrequencyInfoUL for the SUL

supplementaryUplink SEQUENCE {

uplinkConfigCommon UplinkConfigCommon OPTIONAL

-- FFS: Add additional (selection) criteria determining when/whether the UE shall use the SUL frequency

} OPTIONAL, -- Cond SUL

tdd-UL-DL-Configuration TDD-UL-DL-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL, -- Cond TDD

tdd-UL-DL-configurationCommon2 TDD-UL-DL-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL, -- Cond TDD

pdcch-ConfigCommon PDCCH-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL,

pucch-ConfigCommon PUCCH-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL

lateNonCriticalExtension OCTET STRING OPTIONAL,

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE{} OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-SIB1-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

## 6.3 RRC information elements

### 6.3.0 Parameterized types

### – SetupRelease Information Element

*SetupRelease* allows the *ElementTypeParam* to be used as the referenced data type for the setup and release entries. See A.3.8 for guidelines.

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SETUP-RELEASE-START

SetupRelease { ElementTypeParam } ::= CHOICE {

release NULL,

setup ElementTypeParam

}

-- TAG-SETUP-RELEASE-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

### 6.3.1 System information blocks

### 6.3.2 Radio resource control information elements

#### – *Alpha*

The IE Alpha defines possible values for uplink power control.

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-ALPHA-START

Alpha ::= ENUMERATED {alpha0, alpha04, alpha05, alpha06, alpha07, alpha08, alpha09, alpha1}

-- TAG-ALPHA-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### 

#### – *BWPConfig*

The *BWPConfig* IE is used to configure a bandwidth part as defined in 38.211, section 4.2.2. Bandwidth parts are configured per serving cell for uplink (if the serving cell is configured with an uplink) and for downlink.

*-BWP- Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-BANDWIDTH-PART-START

BWPConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Conditions! What to do when certain fields or the entire bandwidth part is omitted? Assume parameters of the carrier instead?

-- Or use the initialBWP derived from SIB1 or ServingCellConfigCommon? Or make it mandatory to provide at least one BWP.

-- The bandwidth parts for downlink. (see 38.211, 38.213, section 12)

downlinkBWPToReleaseList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofBWP)) OF BWPId OPTIONAL,

downlinkBWPToAddModList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofBWP)) OF DownlinkBWP OPTIONAL,

-- ID of the downlink bandwidth part to be used upon MAC-activation of an SCell. If not provided, the UE uses the default BWP

firstActiveDownlinkBWP-Id BWP-Id OPTIONAL, -- Cond SCellOnly

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'default-DL-BWP'.

-- ID of the downlink bandwidth part to be used upon expiry of the bandwidthPartInactivityTimer.

-- This field is UE specific. When the field is absent the UE uses the the initial BWP as default BWP.

-- (see 38.211, 38.213, section 12)

-- FFS: Whether to add a default uplink BWP

defaultDownlinkBWP-Id BWPId OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- The bandwidth parts for uplink. In case of TDD uplink- and downlink BWP with the same bandwidthPartId are considered

-- as a BWP pair and must have the same center frequency.

uplinkBWPToReleaseList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofBWP)) OF BWP OPTIONAL,

uplinkBWPToAddModList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofBWP)) OF UplinkBWP OPTIONAL,

-- ID of the uplink bandwidth part to be used upon MAC-activation of an SCell. If not provided, the UE uses the FFS: default BWP

firstActiveUplinkBwp-Id Bwp-Id OPTIONAL, -- Cond SCellOnly

bwpPairToReleaseList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofBWP-Pair)) OF BWP-Pair OPTIONAL, --Cond Tdd only

bwpPairToAddModList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofBWP-Pair)) OF BWP-Pair OPTIONAL, --Cond Tdd only

-- The duration in ms after which the UE falls back to the default Bandwidth Part. (see 38.321, section FFS\_Section)

-- The UE starts the timer when it switches its active downlink BWP to a downlink BWP other than the default downlink BWP.

-- The UE restarts the timer to the initial value when it successfully decodes a DCI to schedule PDSCH(s) in its active downlink BWP.

-- When the timer expires, the UE switches its active downlink BWP to the default downlink (FFS: and uplink?) BWP.

-- The value 0.5 ms is only applicable for carriers >6 GHz

-- FFS: For TDD the UE switches also the paired uplink BWP to the one with the defaultDownlinkBwp-Id.

-- FFS: For FDD the UE switches the uplink BWP????? If only DL is affected, consider moving it into the DownlinkBWP

-- FFS: RAN2 to discuss/confirm value range. RAN1 just suggested values from 1ms/0.5ms and up to about 50 ms.

-- FFS: Rapporteur adopted DRX inactivity timers as baseline.

-- When the network releases the timer configuration, the UE stops the timer without swithching to the default (FFS: and uplink?) BWP.

bwpInactivityTimer SetupRelease { ENUMERATED {

ms0dot5, ms1, ms2, ms3, ms4, ms5, ms6, ms8, ms10, ms20, ms30, ms40, ms50, ms60, ms80, spare}} OPTIONAL -- Need M

}

-- Parameters used in UplinkBWP and DownlinkBWP

BWP ::= SEQUENCE {

-- An identifier for this bandwidth part.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-BWP-index'. (see 38.211, 38.213, section 12)

bwp-Id BWP-Id,

-- Frequency domain location and bandwidth of this bandwidth part defined commonly in a table (FFS\_Section). It represents the

-- distance in number of PRBs in relation to the lowest usable subcarrier defined by the scsSpecificCarrier

-- with the same subcarrier spacing as this BWP.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-BWP-loc'. (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section).

-- In case of TDD, a BWP-pair (UL BWP and DL BWP with the same bwp-Id) must have the same location (see 38.211, section REF)

-- FFS\_Value: RAN1 seems to discuss the final range.

locationAndBandwidth INTEGER (1..65536) OPTIONAL,

-- Subcarrier spacing to be used in this BWP. It is applied to at least PDCCH, PDSCH and corresponding DMRS.

-- The values provided here are converted into a subcarrier spacing as indicated in 38.211, Table 4.2-1.

-- FFS: Isn't the SCS known from the SCS configured in the scsSpecificCarrier?

subcarrierSpacing ENUMERATED {n0, n1, n2, n3, n4} OPTIONAL,

-- Indicates whether to use the extended cyclic prefix for this bandwidth part.

-- Normal CP is supported for all numerologies and slot formats. Extended CP is supported only for 60 kHz subcarrier spacing.

-- (see 38.211, section 4.2.2)

cyclicPrefix ENUMERATED { extended, normal }

}

UplinkBWP ::= SEQUENCE {

genericParameters BWP, -- Frequency location of the uplink "direct current" frequency.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-BWP-DC'. (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

directCurrentLocation INTEGER (0..3299) OPTIONAL,

-- FFS\_CHECK: Several (UE specific) BWPs may be configured with RACH resources. Hence, they must be provided with

-- the information in RACH-ConfigCommon... even though it is in this case strictly speaking not a cell-specific parameter.

-- OK to keep or re-structure the RACH config?

rach-ConfigCommon RACH-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL,

pusch-ConfigCommon PUSCH-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL,

pusch-Config PUSCH-Config OPTIONAL, -- FFS: Is the PUSCH also BWP-specific??

pucch-ConfigCommon PUCCH-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL,

pucch-Config PUCCH-Config OPTIONAL

}

DownlinkBWP ::= SEQUENCE {

genericParameters BandwidthPart,

pdcch-ConfigCommon PDCCH-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL

}

BWP-Pair ::= SEQUENCE {

bwp-Pair-Id BWP-pair-Id

dl-BWP-Id BWP-Id

ul-BWP-Id BWP-Id

}

BWPId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofBandwidthParts-1)

-- TAG-BANDWIDTH-PART-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### 

#### – *CellGroupConfig*

The *CellGroupConfig* IE is used to configure a master cell group (MCG) or secondary cell group (SCG). A cell group comprises of one MAC entity, a set of logical channels with associated RLC entities and of a primary cell (SpCell) and one or more secondary cells (SCells).

*CellGroupConfig* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-CELL-GROUP-CONFIG-START

-- Configuration of one Cell-Group:

CellGroupConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

cellGroupId CellGroupId,

-- Logical Channel configuration and association with radio bearers:

rlc-BearerToAddModList SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxLCH)) OF LCH-Config OPTIONAL, -- Need M

rlc-BearerToReleaseList SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxLCH)) OF LogicalChannelIdentity OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Parameters applicable for the entire cell group:

mac-CellGroupConfig MAC-CellGroupConfig OPTIONAL, -- Need M

rlf-TimersAndConstants RLF-TimersAndConstants OPTIONAL, -- Need M

physicalCellGroupConfig PhysicalCellGroupConfig OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Serving Cell specific parameters (PCell and SCells)

spCellConfig SpCellConfig OPTIONAL, -- Need M

sCellToAddModList SCellToAddModList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

sCellToReleaseList SCellToReleaseList OPTIONAL -- Need M

...

}

CellGroupId ::= INTEGER (0.. maxSCellGroups)

-- Configuration of one logical channel:

LCH-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

logicalChannelIdentity LogicalChannelIdentity,

-- Associate the logical channel with an SRB or a DRB:

servedRadioBearer INTEGER (1..32) OPTIONAL, -- Cond LCH-SetupOnly

reestablishRLC ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL, -- Need N

rlc-Config RLC-Config OPTIONAL, -- Cond LCH-Setup

mac-LogicalChannelConfig LogicalChannelConfig OPTIONAL -- Cond LCH-Setup

}

LogicalChannelIdentity ::= INTEGER (1..maxLC-ID)

-- Cell-Group specific L1 parameters

PhysicalCellGroupConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Enables spatial bundling of HARQ ACKs. It is configured per cell group (i.e. for all the cells within the cell group) for PUCCH

-- reporting of HARQ-ACK. It is only applicable when more than 4 layers are possible to schedule.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'HARQ-ACK-spatial-bundling' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

-- Absence indicates that spatial bundling is disabled.

harq-ACK-SpatialBundlingPUCCH ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Enables spatial bundling of HARQ ACKs. It is configured per cell group (i.e. for all the cells within the cell group) for PUSCH

-- reporting of HARQ-ACK. It is only applicable when more than 4 layers are possible to schedule.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'HARQ-ACK-spatial-bundling' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

-- Absence indicates that spatial bundling is disabled.

harq-ACK-SpatialBundlingPUSCH ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL -- Need R

}

-- Serving cell specific MAC and PHY parameters for a SpCell:

SpCellConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Parameters for the synchronous reconfiguration to the target SpCell:

reconfigurationWithSync SEQUENCE {

spCellConfigCommon ServingCellConfigCommon,

newUE-Identity RNTI-Value,

t304 ENUMERATED {ms50, ms100, ms150, ms200, ms500, ms1000, ms2000, ms10000},

rach-ConfigDedicated RACH-ConfigDedicated OPTIONAL -- Need S

} OPTIONAL, -- Cond SpCellChange

spCellConfigDedicated ServingCellConfigDedicated OPTIONAL -- Need M

}

SCellToReleaseList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSCells)) OF SCellIndex

SCellToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSCells)) OF SCellConfig

SCellConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

sCellIndex SCellIndex,

sCellConfigCommon ServingCellConfigCommon OPTIONAL, -- Cond SCellAdd

sCellConfigDedicated ServingCellConfigDedicated OPTIONAL -- Cond SCellAddMod

}

-- TAG-CELL-GROUP-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

|  |
| --- |
| *CellGroupConfig* field descriptions |
| ***logicalChannelIdentity***  The logical channel identity for both UL and DL. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Conditional Presence | Explanation |
| *LCH-SetupOnly* | The field is mandatory present if the corresponding LCH is being set up; otherwise it is not present. |
| *LCH-Setup* | The field is mandatory present if the corresponding LCH is being set up; otherwise it is optionally present, need M. |
| *SpCellChange* | The field is mandatory present in case of SpCell change and security key change; otherwise it is optionally present, need M. |
| *SCellAdd* | The field is optionally present, need M, upon SCell addition; otherwise it is not present |
| *SCellAddMod* | The field is mandatory present upon SCell addition; otherwise it is optionally present, need M. |

#### – *CellIndexList*

The IE CellIndexList concerns a list of cell indices, which may be used for different purposes.

*CellIndexList* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-CELL-INDEX-LIST-START

CellIndexList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCellMeas)) OF CellIndex

CellIndex ::= INTEGER (1..maxNrofCellMeas)

-- TAG-CELL-INDEX-LIST-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *ControlResourceIndex*

The *ControlResourceIndex* IE concerns a short identity, used to identify a control resource set.

*ControlResourceIndex* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-CONTROL-RESOURCE-INDEX-START

ControlResourceIndex ::= INTEGER (1..maxNrofControlResourceSets)

-- TAG-CONTROL-RESOURCE-INDEX-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *CrossCarrierSchedulingConfig*

The IE *CrossCarrierSchedulingConfig* is used to specify the configuration when the cross-carrier scheduling is used in a cell.

*CrossCarrierSchedulingConfig* information elements

-- ASN1START

CrossCarrierSchedulingConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Indicate this separately for UL and DL (as done in LTE for LAA)

schedulingCellInfo CHOICE {

own SEQUENCE { -- No cross carrier scheduling

cif-Presence BOOLEAN

},

other SEQUENCE { -- Cross carrier scheduling

schedulingCellId ServCellIndex,

-- FFS: pdsch-start is probably not needed since RAN1 agreed that the scheduling DCI can provide (an index into a

-- UE-specific table giving) the OFDM symbols used for the PDSCH (or PUSCH) transmission. But what does “can provide” mean?

pdsch-Start INTEGER (1..4),

-- FFS: cif-InSchedulingCell is probably still needed since RAN1 agreed that “If CIF is present in DCI, the bitwidth is fixed at 3 bit”.

cif-InSchedulingCell INTEGER (1..7)

}

}

}

-- ASN1STOP

| *CrossCarrierSchedulingConfig* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***cif-Presence***  The field is used to indicate whether carrier indicator field is present (value TRUE) or not (value FALSE) in PDCCH/EPDCCH DCI formats, see TS 38.213 [REF, SECTION]. |
| ***cif-InSchedulingCell***  The field indicates the CIF value used in the scheduling cell to indicate a grant or assignment applicable for this cell, see TS 38.213 [REF, SECTION]. If *cif-Presence* is set to true, the CIF value indicating a grant or assignment for this cell is 0. |
| ***pdsch-Start***  The starting OFDM symbol of PDSCH for the concerned SCell, see TS [REF]. Values 1, 2, 3 are applicable when *dl-Bandwidth* for the concerned SCell is greater than 10 resource blocks, values 2, 3, 4 are applicable when *dl-Bandwidth* for the concerned SCell is less than or equal to 10 resource blocks, see TS [REF]. |
| ***schedulingCellId***  Indicates which cell signals the downlink allocations and uplink grants, if applicable, for the concerned SCell. In case the UE is configured with DC, the scheduling cell is part of the same cell group (i.e. MCG or SCG) as the scheduled cell. |

#### – *CSI-MeasConfig*

The *CSI-MeasConfig* IE is used to configure the UE for measuring CSI-RS (reference signals) and for reporting those measurements on L1 (PUCCH, PUSCH) as channel state information. See also 38.214, section 5.2.

*CSI-MeasConfig* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-CSI-MEAS-CONFIG-START

-- Top level parameter for CSI/BM framework. Contains lists of reporting, resource, and link configurations (see 38.214, section 5.2)

CSI-MeasConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

csi-ResourceConfigs SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCSI-ResrouceConfigurations)) OF CSI-ResourceConfig OPTIONAL,

csi-ReportConfigs SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCSI-Reports)) OF CSI-ReportConfig OPTIONAL,

csi-MeasIdToAddModList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCSI-MeasId)) OF CSI-MeasIdToAddMod OPTIONAL,

-- Size of CSI request field in DCI (bits). Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ReportTriggerSize' (see 38.214, section 5.2)

reportTriggerSize INTEGER (0..6) OPTIONAL,

-- Contains trigger states for dynamically selecting one or more aperiodic and semi-persistent reporting configurations

-- and/or triggering one or more aperiodic CSI-RS resource sets for channel and/or interference measurement.

-- New description (still not clear and not fitting to other fields): Each trigger state is associated with one or multiple ReportConfigs where each ReportConfig is linked to one or two or three P/SP/AP CSI-RS resource setting(s). If a resource setting linked to a ReportConfig has multiple aperiodic resource sets and only a subset of the aperiodic resource sets is associated with the trigger state, a bitmap (with the bitwidth Nbit =number of resource sets in a resource setting. Number of one(s) in the bitmap None = 1 (FFS on 2) for CSI acquisition) is RRC configured per trigger state per resource setting to select CSI-IM/NZP CSI-RS resource set(s) from the resource setting.

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is this the appropriate place for the IE or should it be inside the resource configuration or in a set?

-- FFS\_FIXME: This is just one report trigger. But of course it should be a list. Maximum number of configured triggers depends

-- on the trigger size

-- FFS: How to address the MAC-CE configuration

reportTrigger SEQUENCE {

aperiodic SEQUENCE {

-- The CSI-ReportConfig (their IDs) associated with this reportTrigger

associatedReportConfigs SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofReportConfigIdsPerTrigger)) OF CSI-ReportConfigId,

-- bitmap with the bitwidth Nbit =number of resource sets (max number Nbit = 64) in a linked resource setting per report trigger tate.

-- Number of one(s) in the bitmap None = 1 for CSI acquisition (FFS 1<= None <= 64 for beam management).

-- FFS: To enforce the number of linked resources, the linking information should instead be in the report that uses the resource

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ResourceSetBitmap' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_FIXME: The following list assumes that all NZP- and IM resource sets use a common ID space. But that is not ensured

-- due to having separate lists of sets.

associatedResourceSets SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..64)) OF CSI-ResourceSetId OPTIONAL,

-- For a trigger state within aperiodicReportTrigger that triggers a ap-CSI-RS resource set, contains a list of

-- references to TCI-RS-SetConfig's in TCI-States for providing the QCL source and QCL type for each ap-CSI-RS

-- resource within the triggered set of ap-CSI-RS resources. The length of the list is equal to the number of

-- aperiodic CSI-RS resources in the set (CSI-RS-ResourceSet). For a target aperiodic CSI-RS assoicated with each

-- triggering state, contains a reference to one TCI-RS-Set in TCI-States for providing the QCL source and QCL type.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'QCL-Info-aPeriodicReportingTrigger' (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.5.1)

qcl-Info-aPeriodicReportingTrigger SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..ffsValue)) OF TCI-RS-SetId OPTIONAL

},

semiPersistentOnPUSCH SEQUENCE {

associatedReportConfig CSI-ReportConfigId

}

}

}

-- One CSI resource configuration comprising of one or more resource sets

CSI-ResourceConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

csi-ResourceConfigId CSI-ResourceConfigId,

-- Contains up to maxNrofCSI-ResourceSets resource CSI-ReosurceSets if ResourceConfigType is 'aperiodic' and 1 otherwise.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ResourceSetConfigList' (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.3.1)

csi-RS-ResourceSets CHOICE {

nzp-CSI-RS-ResourceSets SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCSI-ResourceSets)) OF NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceSet,

csi-IM-ResourceSets SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCSI-ResourceSets)) OF CSI-IM-ResourceSet

},

-- List of SSB resources used for beam measurement and reporting in a resource set

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'resource-config-SS-list' (see 38,214, section FFS\_Section)

ssb-Resources SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSSB-Resources-1)) OF CSI-SSB-Resource OPTIONAL, --Cond OnlyWithNZPResourceSets

-- The DL BWP which the CSI-RS assocaited with this CSI-ResourceConfig are located in.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'BWP-Info' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

bwp-Id BWP-Id,

-- Time domain behavior of resource configuration. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ResourceConfigType' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.5)

resourceType CHOICE {

aperiodic NULL,

semiPersistent NULL,

periodic SEQUENCE {

-- For a target periodic CSI-RS, contains a reference to one TCI-RS-Set in TCI-States for providing the QCL source and

-- QCL type. For periodic CSI-RS, the source can be SSB or another periodic-CSI-RS.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'QCL-Info-PeriodicCSI-RS' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

qcl-InfoPeriodicCSI-RS TCI-RS-SetId OPTIONAL

}

},

-- Indication of which Serving Cell the configured CSI-RS is located in.

-- FFS\_CHECK: RAN1 intended to enable cross-carrier scheduling of aperiodoic CSI-RS. This field would indicate on which ServingCell

-- the UE finds these resources. Discuss whether and how this works considering that currently a CSI-MeasConfig exists per ServingCell

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CC\_Info' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.1)

crossCarrierInfo FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

...

}

CSI-ResourceConfigId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofCSI-ResourceConfigurations-1)

-- A set of Non-Zero-Power (NZP) CSI-RS resources (their IDs) and set-specific parameters.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceSetConfigList' (see 38.214, section 5.2)

NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceSet ::= SEQUENCE {

csi-ResourceSetId CSI-ResourceSetId, -- NZP-CSI-RS-Resources assocaited with this NZP-CSI-RS resource set.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-RS-ResourceConfigList' (see 38.214, section 5.2)

-- FFS: Better make the csi-rs-Resources a common pool on CSI-MeasConfig level?

nzp-CSI-RS-Resources SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCSI-RS-ResourcesPerSet)) OF NZP-CSI-RS-Resource,

-- Indicates whether repetition is on/off. Repetition on (off), means that The UE can (cannot) assume that

-- the network maintains a fixed TX beam over the resources in the set.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-RS-ResourceRep' (see 38.214, sections 5.2.2.3.1 and 5.1.6.1.2)

repetition BOOLEAN,

-- Offset X between the slot containing the DCI that triggers a set of aperiodic NZP CSI-RS resources and the slot in which the

-- CSI-RS resource set is transmitted. When the field is absent the UE applies the value 0.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Aperiodic-NZP-CSI-RS-TriggeringOffset' (see 38,214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is this field at the correct place? Or should it be in the trigger configuration instead?

aperiodicTriggeringOffset FFS\_Value OPTIONAL -- Need S

}

CSI-ResourceSetId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofCSI-ResourceSets-1)

-- A CSI-RS (reference signal) resource which the UE may be configured to measure on (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.1)

NZP-CSI-RS-Resource ::= SEQUENCE {

nzp-CSI-RS-ResourceId NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId,

-- Number of ports (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.1)

nrofPorts ENUMERATED {p1,p2,p4,p8,p12,p16,p24,p32},

-- OFDM symbol location(s) in a slot and subcarrier occupancy in a PRB of the CSI-RS resource

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-RS-ResourceMapping' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.1)

resourceMapping SEQUENCE {

-- Frequency domain allocation within a physical resource block in accordance with 38.211, section 7.4.1.5.3 including table 7.4.1.5.2-1.

-- The number of bits that may be set to one depend on the chosen row in that table.

frequencyDomainAllocation CHOICE {

row1 BIT STRING (SIZE (4)),

row2 BIT STRING (SIZE (12)),

row4 BIT STRING (SIZE (3)),

other BIT STRING (SIZE (6))

},

-- Time domain allocation within a physical resource block. The field indicates the first OFDM symbol in the PRB used for CSI-RS.

-- Value 2 is supported only when DL-DMRS-typeA-pos equals 3.

firstOFDMSymbolInTimeDomain INTEGER (0..13)

},

-- CDM type (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.1)

cdm-Type ENUMERATED {noCDM, fd-CDM2, cdm4-FD2-TD2, cdm8-FD2-TD4},

-- Density of CSI-RS resource measured in RE/port/PRB. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-RS-Density' (see 38.211, section 7.4.1.5.3)

-- Values 0.5 (dot5), 1 (one) and 3 (three) are allowed for X=1,

-- values 0.5 (dot5) and 1 (one) are allowed for X=2, 16, 24 and 32,

-- value 1 (one) is allowed for X=4, 8, 12.

-- For density = 1/2, includes 1 bit indication for RB level comb offset indicating whether odd or even RBs are occupied by CSI-RS

density CHOICE {

dot5 ENUMERATED {evenPRBs, oddPRBs},

one NULL,

three NULL,

spare NULL

},

-- Wideband or partial band CSI-RS. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-RS-FreqBand' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.1)

freqBand SEQUENCE {

-- PRB where this NZP-CSI-RS-Resource starts in relation to PRB 0 of the associated BWP. Only multiples of 4 are allowed (0, 4, ...)

startingRB INTEGER (0..maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks-1),

-- Number of PRBs across which this NZP-CSI-RS-Resource spans. Only multiples of 4 are allowed. The smallest configurable

-- number is the minimum of 24 and the width of the associated BWP.

nrofRBs INTEGER (24..maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks)

},

-- Power offset of NZP CSI-RS RE to PDSCH RE. Value in dB. Corresponds to L1 parameter Pc (see 38.214, sections 5.2.2.3.1 and 4.1)

powerControlOffset INTEGER(-8..15),

-- Power offset of NZP CSI-RS RE to SS RE. Value in dB. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Pc\_SS' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

powerControlOffsetSS ENUMERATED{db-3, db0, db3, db6} OPTIONAL,

-- Scrambling ID (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.1)

scramblingID ScramblingId,

-- Periodicity and slot offset in number of slots. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-RS-timeConfig' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.1)

periodicityAndOffset CHOICE {

sl5 INTEGER (0..4),

sl10 INTEGER (0..9),

sl20 INTEGER (0..19),

sl40 INTEGER (0..39),

sl80 INTEGER (0..79),

sl160 INTEGER (0..159),

sl320 INTEGER (0..319),

sl640 INTEGER (0..639)

},

-- Indicates whether or not the antenna ports of NZP CSI-RS resources in the CSI-RS resource set is same

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TRS-Info' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.1)

trs-Info ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL

}

NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofNZP-CSI-RS-Resources-1)

-- A set of CSI Interference Management (IM) resources (their IDs) and set-specific parameters

CSI-IM-ResourceSet ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Where is the csi-im-ResourceSetId used?

csi-IM-ResourceSetId CSI-ResourceSetId,

-- CSI-IM-Resources associated with this CSI-IM-ResourceSet

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-IM-ResourceConfigList' (see 38.214, section 5.2)

csi-IM-Resources SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxNrofCSI-IM-ResourcesPerSet)) OF CSI-IM-Resource

}

CSI-IM-Resource ::= SEQUENCE {

csi-IM-ResourceId CSI-IM-ResourceId,

-- The resource element pattern for the CSI-IM resource

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-IM-RE-pattern' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.4)

csi-IM-ResourceElementPattern ENUMERATED {pattern2-2, pattern4-1},

-- OFDM symbol and subcarrier occupancy of the CSI-IM resource within a slot

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-IM-ResourceMapping' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.4)

-- FFS\_Values: RAN1 indicated “symbol locations: [0..13] and subcarrier locations: [0..9]” 🡺 Should this be a bitmap of 9x13? Or two separate?

resourceMapping ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue} OPTIONAL,

-- Frequency-occupancy of CSI-IM. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-IM-FreqBand' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3.2)

freqBand FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Contains periodicity and slot offset for periodic/semi-persistent CSI-IM

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-IM-timeConfig'

periodicityAndOffset CHOICE {

sl5 INTEGER (0..4),

sl10 INTEGER (0..9),

sl20 INTEGER (0..19),

sl40 INTEGER (0..39),

sl80 INTEGER (0..79),

sl160 INTEGER (0..159),

sl320 INTEGER (0..319),

sl640 INTEGER (0..639)

},

CSI-IM-ResourceId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofCSI-IM-Resources-1)

CSI-SSB-Resource ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Undefined what the IE CSI-SSB-Resource contains.

}

-- Configuration of a CSI-Report sent on L1 (e.g. PUCCH) (see 38.214, section 5.2.1)

CSI-ReportConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

reportConfigId CSI-ReportConfigId,

-- Time domain behavior of reporting configuration

reportConfigType CHOICE {

periodic SEQUENCE {

-- Periodicity and slot offset . Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ReportPeriodicity'and 'ReportSlotOffset'

-- (see 38.214, section section 5.2.1.4).

reportSlotConfig CHOICE {

sl5 INTEGER(0..4),

sl10 INTEGER(0..9),

sl20 INTEGER(0..19),

sl40 INTEGER(0..39),

sl80 INTEGER(0..79),

sl160 INTEGER(0..159),

sl320 INTEGER(0..319)

},

-- Indicates which PUCCH resource to use for reporting on PUCCH.

pucch-CSI-Resource PUCCH-CSI-Resource

},

semiPersistentPUCCH SEQUENCE {

-- Periodicity and slot offset. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ReportPeriodicity' and 'ReportSlotOffset'

-- (see 38.214, section section 5.2.1.4).

reportSlotConfig CHOICE {

sl5 INTEGER(0..4),

sl10 INTEGER(0..9),

sl20 INTEGER(0..19),

sl40 INTEGER(0..39),

sl80 INTEGER(0..79),

sl160 INTEGER(0..159),

sl320 INTEGER(0..319)

},

-- Indicates which PUCCH resource to use for reporting on PUCCH.

pucch-CSI-Resource PUCCH-CSI-Resource

},

semiPersistentPUSCH SEQUENCE {

-- Periodicity. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Reportperiodicity-spCSI'. (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.1?)

reportSlotConfig ENUMERATED {sl5, sl10, sl20, sl40, sl80, sl160, sl320},

-- RNTI for SP CSI-RNTI, Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SPCSI-RNTI' (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.5.2)

-- FFS: RAN1 models different RNTIs as different Search Spaces with independent configurations. Align the configuration

-- of this one (e.g. group with monitoring periodicity, PDCCH candidate configuration, DCI-Payload size...)?

csi-RNTI RNTI-Value,

-- Index of the p0-alpha set determining the power control for this CSI report transmission.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SPCSI-p0alpha' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

p0alpha P0-PUSCH-AlphaSetId

},

aperiodic SEQUENCE {

-- Timing offset Y for aperiodic reporting using PUSCH. This field lists the allowed offset values. A particular value is indicated in DCI.

-- (see 38.214, section 5.2.3)

-- FFS\_Value: Range wasn’t final in RAN1 table.

-- FFS\_FIXME: How are the DCI codepoints mapped to the allowed offsets?

reportSlotOffset SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..4)) OF INTEGER (0..8)

}

},

-- The CSI related quanities to report (see 38.214, section REF)

reportQuantity CHOICE {

none NULL,

cri-RI-PMI-CQI NULL,

cri-RI-i1 NULL,

cri-RI-i1-CQI SEQUENCE {

-- PRB bundling size to assume for CQI calcuation when reportQuantity is CRI/RI/i1/CQI

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUSCH-bundle-size-for-CSI' (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.4)

pusch-BundleSizeForCSI ENUMERATED {n2, n4} OPTIONAL

},

cri-RI-CQI NULL,

cri NULL,

cri-RSRP NULL,

cri-RI-LI-PMI-CQI NULL

},

-- Reporting configuration in the frequency domain. (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.4)

reportFreqConfiguration SEQUENCE {

-- Indicates whether the UE shall report a single (wideband) or multiple (subband) CQI. (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.4)

cqi-FormatIndicator ENUMERATED { widebandCQI, subbandCQI },

-- Indicates whether the UE shall report a single (wideband) or multiple (subband) PMI. (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.4)

pmi-FormatIndicator ENUMERATED { widebandPMI, subbandPMI },

-- Indicates a contiguous or non-contigous subset of subbands in the bandwidth part which CSI shall be reported

-- for. FFS: Each bit in the bit-string represents one subband. The right-most bit in the bit string represents the

-- lowest subband in the BWP. (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.4)

-- FFS: Size of the bitmap. Introduce a CHOICE with different bitmap lengths depening on number of subbands in carrier/BWP?

csi-ReportingBand BIT STRING (SIZE (ffsValue))

},

-- Time domain measurement restriction for the channel (signal) measurements. (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.1)

timeRestrictionForChannelMeasurements ENUMERATED {configured, notConfigured},

-- Time domain measurement restriction for interference measurements. (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.1)

timeRestrictionForInterferenceMeasurements ENUMERATED {configured, notConfigured},

-- Codebook configuration for Type-1 or Type-II including codebook subset restriction

codebookConfig CodebookConfig,

-- Maximum number of CQIs per CSI report (cf. 1 for 1-CW, 2 for 2-CW)

nrofCQIsPerReport ENUMERATED {n1, n2},

-- Turning on/off group beam based reporting (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.4)

groupBasedBeamReporting CHOICE {

enabled SEQUENCE {

-- Number of beams to report for group based beam reporting (see 38.214, section REF)

nrofBeamsToReport ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

},

disabled SEQUENCE {

-- The number (N) of measured RS resources to be reported per report setting in a non-group-based report.

-- N <= N\_max, where N\_max is either 2 or 4 depending on UE capability.

-- FFS: The signaling mechanism for the gNB to select a subset of N beams for the UE to measure and report.

-- FFS: Note: this parameter may not be needed for certain resource and/or report settings

-- FFS\_ASN1: Change groupBasedBeamReporting into a CHOICE and include this field into the “no” option?

-- (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 1

nrofReportedRS ENUMERATED {n1, n2, n3, n4} OPTIONAL -- Need S

}

},

-- Which CQI table to use for CQI calculation. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CQI-table' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.1)

-- FFS: Whether URLLC2 should be added as one option

cqi-Table ENUMERATED {qam64, qam256, urllc1, urllc2} OPTIONAL,

-- Indicates one out of two possible BWP-dependent values for the subband size as indicated in 38.214 table 5.2.1.4-2

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SubbandSize' (see 38.214, section 5.2.1.4)

subbandSize ENUMERATED {value1, value2},

-- BLER target that the UE shall be assume in its CQI calculation.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'BLER-Target' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.1)

-- FFS\_Values (now filled with spares)

bler-Target ENUMERATED {zerodot1, spare3, space2, spare1} OPTIONAL,

-- Port indication for RI/CQI calculation. For each CSI-RS resource in the linked ResourceConfig for channel measurement,

-- a port indication for each rank R, indicating which R ports to use. Applicable only for non-PMI feedback.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Non-PMI-PortIndication' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

non-PMI-PortIndication FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Which DL BWP the CSI-ReportConfig is associated with. (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_CHECK: Should it be possible to link a report to several BWPs? If not, shouldn’t the report configuration be in the BWP?

-- FFS\_CHECK: Should it be possible to link a report to the initial BWP? If so, which ID does that have?

bwp-Id BWP-Id OPTIONAL

}

PUCCH-CSI-Resource ::= CHOICE {

format2 PUCCH-format2,

format3 PUCCH-format3,

format4 PUCCH-format4

}

CSI-ReportConfigId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofCSI-ReportConfig-1)

-- Codebook configuration for Type-I and Type-II (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.2)

CodebookConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Number of antenna ports in first dimension

codebookConfigN1 ENUMERATED {n1,n2,n3,n4,n6,n8,n12,n16},

-- Number of antenna ports in second dimension

codebookConfigN2 ENUMERATED {n1,n2,n3,n4},

-- Codebook subset restriction for the different codebooks

-- CodebookType including possibly sub-types and the corresponding parameters for each. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CodebookType'

-- (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.2)

codebookType CHOICE {

type1 SEQUENCE {

subType ENUMERATED {typeI-SinglePanel, typeI-MultiPanel},

-- Switch between Config 1 and Config 2

codebookMode ENUMERATED {config1, config2},

-- Number of panels, Ng, used in multi-panel codebook

numberOfPanels ENUMERATED {twopanels, fourpanels} OPTIONAL, -- Cond TypeI-MultiPanel

codebookSubsetRestrictionType1 CHOICE {

-- Codebook subset restriction for Type I Single-panel codebook

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TypeI-SinglePanel-CodebookSubsetRestriction' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_Value: RAN1 indicated Bitmap of size N1\*N2\*O1\*O2

singlePanel BIT STRING (SIZE (ffsValue)),

-- Codebook subset restriction for 2TX codebook

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TypeI-SinglePanel-2Tx-CodebookSubsetRestriction' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

singlePanel2TX BIT STRING (SIZE (6)),

-- Codebook subset restriction for Type I Multi-panel codebook

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TypeI-MultiPanel-CodebookSubsetRestriction' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

multiPanel BIT STRING (SIZE (ffsValue)),

-- i2 codebook subset restriction for Type I Single-panel codebook used when reportQuantity is CRI/Ri/i1/CQI

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TypeI-SinglePanel-CodebookSubsetRestriction-i2' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

singlePanelCodebookSubsetRestriction-i2 BIT STRING (SIZE (16))

},

ri-Restriction CHOICE {

-- Restriction for RI for TypeI-SinglePanel-RI-Restriction

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TypeI-SinglePanel-RI-Restriction' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

typeI-SinglePanelRI-Restriction BIT STRING (SIZE (8)),

-- Restriction for RI for TypeI-MultiPanel-RI-Restriction

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TypeI-MultiPanel-RI-Restriction' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

typeI-MultiPanelRI-Restriction BIT STRING (SIZE (4))

}

},

type2 SEQUENCE {

subType ENUMERATED {typeII, typeII-PortSelection},

-- The size of the PSK alphabet, QPSK or 8-PSK

phaseAlphabetSize ENUMERATED {n4, n8},

-- If subband amplitude reporting is activated (true)

subbandAmplitude BOOLEAN,

-- Number of beams, L, used for linear combination

numberOfBeams ENUMERATED {two, three, four},

-- The size of the port selection codebook (parameter d)

portSelectionSamplingSize ENUMERATED {n1, n2, n3, n4} OPTIONAL, -- Cond TypeII-PortSelection

-- Codebook subset restriction for Type II codebook.

-- FFS: Clarify the meaning of the bitmap

-- FFS: The size of the bitmap is ceil(log2(nchoosek(O1\*O2,4)))+8\*N1\*N2 ==> Clarify size. Present different bitmap sizes by CHOICE?

codebookSubsetRestrictionType2 BIT STRING (SIZE (ffsValue)),

ri-Restriction CHOICE {

-- Restriction for RI for TypeII-RI-Restriction

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TypeII-RI-Restriction' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.3)

typeII-RI-Restriction BIT STRING (SIZE (2)),

-- Restriction for RI for TypeII-PortSelection-RI-Restriction

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TypeII-PortSelection-RI-Restriction' (see 38.214, section 5.2.2.4)

typeII-PortSelectionRI-Restriction BIT STRING (SIZE (2))

}

}

}

}

-- Linking a CSI-RS-ResourceConfig with a CSI-ReportConfig (see 38.214, section 5.2)

CSI-MeasIdToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

csi-measId CSI-MeasId,

csi-RS-resourceConfigId CSI-ResourceConfigId,

csi-ReportConfigId CSI-ReportConfigId,

-- For CQI-Emulation, i.e., how to measure and compute the CQI.

-- CHECK: Clarify further what the values mean.

-- CHECK: Is there a need to inform the UE which resource to use for which measurement (signal, interference, ...)?

measQuantity ENUMERATED {channel, interference}

}

CSI-MeasId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofCSI-MeasId-1)

-- CHECK: Do the BeamManagement parameters really belong into the CSI context? Or rather to RLF/RLM?

-- FFS\_FIXME: BeamManagement IE is not used anywhere. Is this per BWP? If so, how does it work if the DL BWP changes but the UL BWP does not?

-- Then the RACH resources would not fit the DL beams.

BeamManagement ::= SEQUENCE {

beamFailureDetection SEQUENCE {

-- List of CSI-RS resouces used for beam failure detection

-- FFS: How does this relate to the beam indicates in MAC CE?

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Beam-Failure-Detection-RS-ResourceConfig' (see 38.213, section 6)

failureDetectionResources FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Number of beam failure instances before the UE declares beam failure

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Beam-Failure-Instance-MaxCount' (see 38.321, section FFS\_Section)

beamFailureInstanceMaxCount FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Details on UE behaviour related to the timer is FFS. (Is this like T310, i.e., the timer to monitor whether the actual

-- beams come back? Or is it like T304, i.e., to monitor whether the recovery towards candidate beams succeeds?)

-- FFS: Rename to beamFailureDetectionTimer?

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Beam-failure-recovery-Timer' (see 38.321?, section FFS\_Section)

beamFailureRecoveryTimer FFS\_Value OPTIONAL

},

beamFailureRecovery SEQUENCE {

-- Use of PRACH or/and PUCCH for beam in some combination, details FFS.

-- FFS\_CHECK: Can be removed since beam recovery is only supported with RA?!

linkReconfigurationRequest FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- A RACH configuration which the UE may uses for beam recovery upon beam failure detection

-- FFS: If this field is absent, the UE uses the RACH-ConfigCommon configuration appliable for this serving cell??

-- FFS: Compare with the parameters in RACH-ConfigCommon and try align/re-use.

rach-ConfigCommon SEQUENCE {

-- PRACH root sequence index for beam failure recovery

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'RootSequenceIndex-BFR' (see 38.211, section 6.3.3.1)

rootSequenceIndex INTEGER (0..137) OPTIONAL,

-- N-CS configuration for beam falure recovery, see Table 6.3.3.1-3 in 38.211

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ZeroCorrelationZoneConfig-BFR' (see 38.211, section 6.3.3.1)

zeroCorrelationZoneConfig INTEGER (0..15) OPTIONAL,

-- Received target power for beam failure request for PRACH

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PreambleInitialReceivedTargetPower-BFR' (see 38.213, section 7.4)

preambleReceivedTargetPower FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Maximum number of beam failure request transmissions

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PreambleTransMax-BFR' (see 38.321?, section FFS\_Section)

preambleTransMax FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Power ramping steps for beam failure request via PRACH

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'powerRampingStep-BFR' (see 38.321?, section FFS\_Section)

powerRampingStep ENUMERATED {dB0, dB2,dB4, dB6} OPTIONAL,

-- RAR-Response Window for beamfailure recovery

-- FFS\_Value: Use same value range as for normal RAR window?!

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Beam-failure-recovery-request-window' (see 38.213, section 6)

beamFailureRecoveryRequestWindow ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue} OPTIONAL

},

-- FFS: A set of specific candidate beams of this cell and associated dedicated RA preambles which the UE may use to recover

-- FFS: If this field is absent or if the UE does not detect any of these candidate beams, it may recover towards any other

-- suitable beam of its serving cell using CB-RA.

rach-ConfigDedicated SEQUENCE {

-- The candidate beam can be considered identified when metric X (FFS) of candidate beam is higher than a threshold"

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Beam-failure-candidate-beam-threshold' (see 38.213, section 6)

-- FFS: Can this ever be different than the cell suitability criteria? If it is higher, the UE may declare cell-RLF even though

-- there was actually a suitable beam. And if it is lower, the UE cannot camp/stay on this cell anyway.

beamFailureCandidateBeamThreshold ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue} OPTIONAL,

-- List of candidate beam identification RSs and corresponding RA resources

-- FFS: Compare to and align with rach-ConfigDedicated. Re-use the association of CSI/SSB resources to RA preambles defined there.

-- FFS: Make this a AddMod/Release list?

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Candidate-Beam-RS-List' (see 38.213?, section 6)

candidateBeams SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxNrofCandidateBeams)) OF SEQUENCE {

-- Reference signal used to identify candidate beam

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Candidate-Beam-RS-Identification-Resource' (see 38.213, section 6)

-- FFS: Confirm that this is meant to be a choice of SSB or CSI-RS

beamFailureCandidateBeamResource CHOICE {

ssbId SSB-Index,

csi-RS-Id NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId

},

-- Preamble index used to select one from a sequence pool

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ra-PreambleIndex-BFR' (see 38.211?, section FFS\_Section)

ra-PreambleIndex FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Same meaning as in initial access

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'prach-FreqOffset-BFR' (see 38.211?, section FFS\_Section)

-- Is this really meant to be configured per CF preamble? Or does it belong in COMMON?

prach-FreqOffset FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Time domain mask.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'RACH-resource-mask-BFR' (see 38.211?, section FFS\_Section)

-- Is this really meant to be configured per CF preamble? Or does it belong in COMMON?

rach-ResourceMask FFS\_Value OPTIONAL

} OPTIONAL,

-- ID of the CORESET in which the UE receives the Beam Failure Recovery Response.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Beam-Failure-Recovery-Response-CORESET' (see 38.213, section 6)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value FFS\_DefaultValue

recoveryControlResourceSetId ControlResourceSetId OPTIONAL

} OPTIONAL

}

}

-- TAG-CSI-MEAS-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### *–* *FailureReportSCG-ToOtherRAT*

The IE *FailureReportSCG-ToOtherRAT* is used to provide information regarding failures detected by the UE in case of EN-DC.

*FailureReportSCG-ToOtherRAT* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-FAILURE-REPORT-SCG-TO-OTHER-RAT-START

-- FFS if failureType is needed

FailureReportSCG-ToOtherRAT ::= SEQUENCE {

failureType ENUMERATED { t313-Expiry, randomAccessProblem,

rlc-MaxNumRetx, maxUL-TimingDiff,

scg-ChangeFailure, scg-reconfigFailure,

srb3-IntegrityFailure},

measResultServingFreqList MeasResultServFreqList2NR,

measResultNeighCells MeasResultList2NR,

...

}

MeasResultServFreqList2NR ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofServingCellsmaxNrofServingCells)) OF MeasResultServFreq2NR

MeasResultServFreq2NR ::= SEQUENCE {

carrierFreq ARFCN-ValueNR,

measResultServingCell MeasResultNR,

measResultBestNeighServingCell MeasResultNR OPTIONAL

}

MeasResultList2NR ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxFreq)) OF MeasResult2NR

MeasResult2NR ::= SEQUENCE {

carrierFreq ARFCN-ValueNR,

measResult MeasResultListNR

}

-- TAG-FAILURE-REPORT-SCG-TO-OTHER-RAT-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – FrequencyInfoDL

The IE *FrequencyInfoDL* provides basic parameters of a downlink carrier and transmission thereon.

*FrequencyInfoDL* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-FREQUENCY-INFO-DL-START

FrequencyInfoDL ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Frequency of the SSB to be used for this serving cell.

-- FFS: How to handle carriers without SSB, i.e., when a carrier uses the SSB of another carrier? Does this ARFCN point to that SSB

-- and a larger offset points to the Point A?

absoluteFrequencyDL ARFCN-ValueNR,

-- The frequency domain offset between SSB and the overall resource block grid in number of subcarriers.

-- Absence of the field indicates that no offset is applied (offset = 0). See 38.211, section 7.4.3.1)

ssb-OsubcarrierOSubcarrierOffset INTEGER (1..15) OPTIONAL,

-- Offset between the absoluteFrequencyDL (+ ssb-subcarrier-offset) (FFS: Verify that the addition of subcrarrier offset is correct)

-- and the the lowest subcarrier (point A) of the reference PRB (Common PRB 0). The offset is given

-- in number of PRBs based on 15KHz SCS if absoluteFrequencyDL is in FR1 (<6 GHz) and based on 60KHz SCS if the carrierFreqDL is in FR2

-- (>6 GHz). The maximum value corresponds to 275\*8-1.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'offset-ref-low-scs-ref-PRB' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

offsetToPointA INTEGER (0..2199) OPTIONAL,

-- A set of virtual carriers for different subcarrier spacings (numerologies). Defined in relation to Point A.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'offset-pointA-set' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

scs-SpecificCarriers SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..ffsValue)) OF SCS-SpecificVirtualCarrier OPTIONAL,

...

}

SCS-SpecificVirtualCarrier ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Offset in frequency domain between Point A (lowest subcarrier of common PRB 0) and the lowest usable subcarrier on this virtual carrier.

-- The maximum value corresponds to 275\*8-1. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'offset-pointA-low-scs' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

offsetToVirtualCarrier INTEGER (0..2199) OPTIONAL,

-- Subcarrier spacing of this virtual carrier. It is used to convert the offsetToVirtualCarrier into an actual frequency.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ref-scs' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS: Shouldn't this implicitly also be the SCS of all BWPs associated with this virtual carrier?

subcarrierSpacing SubcarrierSpacing OPTIONAL,

-- FFS\_Description (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

k0 FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Width of this virtual carrier in number of PRBs (using the subcarrier spacing defined for this virtual carrier)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'BW' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

carrierBandwidth INTEGER (1..maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks) OPTIONAL,

...

}

-- TAG-FREQUENCY-INFO-UL-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *FrequencyInfoUL*

The IE *FrequencyInfoUL* provides basic parameters of an uplink carrier and transmission thereon.

*FrequencyInfoUL* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-FREQUENCY-INFO-UL-START

FrequencyInfoUL ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS\_FIXME: Frequency Information parameters need corrections (currently just inherited from LTE).

-- Absolute frequency of the UL carrier if paried spectrum is used (for unpaired spectrum the value of the associated DL applies).

absoluteFrequencyUL ARFCN-ValueNR OPTIONAL, -- Cond FDD

-- Offset between the absoluteFrequencyUL and the the lowest subcarrier (point A) of the reference PRB (Common PRB 0). The offset is given

-- in number of PRBs based on 15KHz SCS if absoluteFrequencyUL is in FR1 (<6 GHz) and based on 60KHz SCS if the carrierFreqDL is in FR2

-- (>6 GHz). The maximum value corresponds to 275\*8-1.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'offset-ref-low-scs-ref-PRB' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

offsetToPointA INTEGER (0..2199) OPTIONAL,

-- A set of virtual carriers for different subcarrier spacings (numerologies). Defined in relation to Point A.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'offset-pointA-set' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

scs-SpecificCarriers SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..ffsValue)) OF SCS-SpecificVirtualCarrier OPTIONAL,

additionalSpectrumEmission AdditionalSpectrumEmission OPTIONAL, -- Need S

p-Max P-Max OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Enable or disable the NR UL transmission with a 7.5KHz shift to the LTE raster

frequencyShift7p5khz ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL, -- Cond FDD

...

}

-- TAG-FREQUENCY-INFO-UL-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *LogicalChannelConfig*

The IE *LogicalChannelConfig* is used to configure the logical channel parameters.

*LogicalChannelConfig* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-LOGICAL-CHANNEL-CONFIG-START

LogicalChannelConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

ul-SpecificParameters SEQUENCE {

priority INTEGER (1..16),

prioritisedBitRate ENUMERATED {kBps0, kBps8, kBps16, kBps32, kBps64, kBps128, kBps256, kBps512,

kBps1024, kBps2048, kBps4096, kBps8192, kBps16384, kBps32768, kBps65536, infinity},

bucketSizeDuration ENUMERATED {ms50, ms100, ms150, ms300, ms500, ms1000, spare2, spare1},

-- FFS: Detailed handling of restrictions (UP email discussion)

-- Defined in L1 parameters but the value range must be checked.

allowedSubCarrierSpacing SubcarrierSpacing OPTIONAL,

allowedTiming ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue} OPTIONAL,

logicalChannelGroup INTEGER (0..maxLCG-IDmaxLCG-ID) OPTIONAL,

logicalChannelSR-Mask BOOLEAN,

logicalChannelSR-DelayTimerApplied BOOLEAN

} OPTIONAL -- Cond UL

-- other parameters

...

}

-- TAG-LOGICAL-CHANNEL-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

|  |
| --- |
| *LogicalChannelConfig field descriptions* |
| ***allowedTiming***  If present, UL MAC PDUs from this logical channel can only be transmittedin the indicated timing as specified in TS 38.321 [3]. |
| ***allowedSubCarrierSpacing***  If present, UL MAC PDUs from this logical channel can only be mapped to the indicated numerology as specified in TS 38.321 [3]. |
| ***bucketSizeDuration***  Value in ms. ms50 corresponds to 50ms, ms100 corresponds to 100ms, and so on. |
| ***logicalChannelGroup***  ID of the logical channel group, as specified in TS 38.321 [3], which the logical channel belongs to. |
| ***logicalChannelSR-Mask***  Indicates whether SR masking is configured for this logical channel. |
| ***logicalChannelSR-DelayTimerApplied***  Indicates whether to apply the delay timer for SR transmission for this logical channel. Set to FALSE if *logicalChannelSR-DelayTimer* is not included in *BSR-Config*. |
| ***priority***  Logical channel priority, as specified in TS 38.321 [3]. |
| ***prioritisedBitRate***  Value in kiloBytes/s. 0kBps corresponds to 0, 8kBps corresponds to 8 kiloBytes/s,16 kBps corresponds to 16 kiloBytes/s, and so on. |
|  |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Conditional Presence | Explanation |
| *UL* | The field is mandatory present for a logical channel with uplink, otherwise it is not present. |

#### – *MAC-CellGroupConfig*

The IE *MAC-CellGroupConfig* is used to configure MAC parameters for a cell group, including DRX.

*MAC-CellGroupConfig* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MAC-CELL-GROUP-CONFIG-START

MAC-CellGroupConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

drx-Config DRX-Config OPTIONAL, -- Need R

schedulingRequestConfig SchedulingRequestConfig OPTIONAL,

bsr-Config BSR-Configuration OPTIONAL, -- Need M

tag-Config TAG-Configuration OPTIONAL, -- Need M

phr-Config PHR-Config OPTIONAL, -- Need M

skipUplinkTxDynamic BOOLEAN

}

DRX-Config ::= CHOICE {

release NULL,

setup SEQUENCE {

drx-onDurationTimer ENUMERATED {

ms1-32, ms2-32, ms3-32, ms4-32, ms5-32, ms6-32, ms7-32, ms8-32, ms9-32, ms10-32, ms11-32,

ms12-32, ms13-32, ms14-32, ms15-32, ms16-32, ms17-32, ms18-32, ms19-32, ms-20-32, ms21-32,

ms22-32, ms23-32, ms24-32, ms25-32, ms26-32, ms27-32, ms28-32, ms29-32, ms30-32, ms31-32,  
 ms1, ms2, ms3, ms4, ms5, ms6, ms8, ms10, ms20, ms30, ms40, ms50, ms60,

ms80, ms100, ms200, ms300, ms400, ms500, ms600, ms800, ms1000, ms1200,

ms1600, spare9, spare8, spare7, spare6, spare5, spare4, spare3, spare2, spare1 },

drx-InactivityTimer ENUMERATED {

ms0, ms1, ms2, ms3, ms4, ms5, ms6, ms8, ms10, ms20, ms30, ms40, ms50, ms60, ms80,

ms100, ms200, ms300, ms500, ms750, ms1280, ms1920, ms2560, spare9, spare8,

spare7, spare6, spare5, spare4, spare3, spare2, spare1},

drx-HARQ-RTT-TimerDL INTEGER (0..56),

drx-HARQ-RTT-TimerUL INTEGER (0..56),

drx-RetransmissionTimerDL ENUMERATED {

sl0, sl1, sl2, sl4, sl6, sl8, sl16, sl24, sl33, sl40, sl64, sl80, sl96, sl112, sl128,

sl160, sl320, spare15, spare14, spare13, spare12, spare11, spare10, spare9,

spare8, spare7, spare6, spare5, spare4, spare3, spare2, spare1},

drx-RetransmissionTimerUL ENUMERATED {

sl0, sl1, sl2, sl4, sl6, sl8, sl16, sl24, sl33, sl40, sl64, sl80, sl96, sl112, sl128,

sl160, sl320, spare15, spare14, spare13, spare12, spare11, spare10, spare9,

spare8, spare7, spare6, spare5, spare4, spare3, spare2, spare1 },

-- FFS units and dependency on numerology for DL and UL retransmission timers

drx-LongCycleStartOffset CHOICE {

ms10 INTEGER(0..9),

ms20 INTEGER(0..19),

ms32 INTEGER(0..31),

ms40 INTEGER(0..39),

ms60 INTEGER(0..59),

ms64 INTEGER(0..63),

ms70 INTEGER(0..69),

ms80 INTEGER(0..79),

ms128 INTEGER(0..127),

ms160 INTEGER(0..159),

ms256 INTEGER(0..255),

ms320 INTEGER(0..319),

ms512 INTEGER(0..511),

ms640 INTEGER(0..639),

ms1024 INTEGER(0..1023),

ms1280 INTEGER(0..1279),

ms2048 INTEGER(0..2047),

ms2560 INTEGER(0..2559),

ms5120 INTEGER(0..5119),

ms10240 INTEGER(0..10239)

},

-- FFS need for finer offset granulary

-- FFS need for shorter values for long and short cycles

shortDRX SEQUENCE {

drx-ShortCycle ENUMERATED {

ms2, ms3, ms4, ms5, ms6, ms7, ms8, ms10, ms14, ms16, ms20, ms30, ms32,

ms35, ms40, ms64, ms80, ms128, ms160, ms256, ms320, ms512, ms640, spare9,

spare8, spare7, spare6, spare5, spare4, spare3, spare2, spare1 },

drx-ShortCycleTimer INTEGER (1..16)

} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

drx-SlotOffset ENUMERATED {

ms0, ms1-32,ms2-32, ms3-32, ms4-32, ms5-32, ms6-32, ms7-32, ms8-32, ms9-32, ms10-32, ms11-32,

ms12-32, ms13-32, ms14-32, ms15-32, ms16-32, ms17-32, ms18-32, ms19-32, ms-20-32, ms21-32,

ms22-32, ms23-32, ms24-32, ms25-32, ms26-32, ms27-32, ms28-32, ms29-32, ms30-32, ms31-32 } }

}

PHR-Config ::= CHOICE {

release NULL,

setup SEQUENCE {

phr-PeriodicTimer ENUMERATED {sf10, sf20, sf50, sf100, sf200,sf500, sf1000, infinity},

phr-ProhibitTimer ENUMERATED {sf0, sf10, sf20, sf50, sf100,sf200, sf500, sf1000},

phr-Tx-PowerFactorChange ENUMERATED {dB1, dB3, dB6, infinity},

multiplePHR BOOLEAN,

phr-Type2PCell BOOLEAN,

phr-Type2OtherCell BOOLEAN,

phr-ModeOtherCG ENUMERATED {real, virtual}

}

}

TAG-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

tag-ToReleaseList TAG-ToReleaseList OPTIONAL, -- Need N

tag-ToAddModList TAG-ToAddModList OPTIONAL -- Need N

}

TAG-ToReleaseList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofTAGs)) OF TAG-Id

TAG-ToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofTAGs)) OF TAG-ToAddMod

TAG-ToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

tag-Id TAG-Id,

timeAlignmentTimer TimeAlignmentTimer,

...

}

TAG-Id ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofTAGs-1)

TimeAlignmentTimer ::= ENUMERATED {ms500, ms750, ms1280, ms1920, ms2560, ms5120,ms10240, infinity}

BSR-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: other values for periodicBSR-Timer, "every PDU" value

periodicBSR-Timer ENUMERATED {

sf1, sf5, sf10, sf16, sf20, sf32, sf40, sf64, sf80, sf128, sf160, sf320, sf640, sf1280, sf2560, infinity},

retxBSR-Timer ENUMERATED { sf10, sf20, sf40, sf80, sf160, sf320, sf640, sf1280, sf2560, sf5120, sf10240},

logicaChannelSR-DelayTimer ENUMERATED { sf20, sf40, sf64, sf128, sf512, sf1024, sf2560, spare1} OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-MAC-CELL-GROUP-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| *MAC-CellGroupConfig* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***drx-Config***  Used to configure DRX as specified in TS 38.321 [3]. |
| ***drx-HARQ-RTT-TimerDL***  Value in multiple integers of 1ms. ms0 corresponds to 0, ms1 corresponds to 1ms, ms2 corresponds to 2ms, and so on. |
| ***drx-HARQ-RTT-TimerUL***  Value in number of symbols. |
| ***drx-InactivityTimer***  Value in number of symbols. |
| ***drx-onDurationTimer***  Value in ms. ms1-32 corresponds to 1/32ms, ms2-32 corresponds to 2/32ms, and so on. ms1 corresponds to 1ms, ms2 corresponds to 2ms, and so on. |
| ***drx-LongCycleStartOffset***  *drx-LongCycle* in ms and *drx-StartOffset* in multiples of 1ms. |
| ***drx-RetransmissionTimerDL***  Value in number of slots. sl1 corresponds to 1 slot, sl2 corresponds to 2 slots, and so on. |
| ***drx-RetransmissionTimerUL***  Value in number of slots. sl1 corresponds to 1 slot, sl2 corresponds to 2 slots, and so on. |
| ***drx-ShortCycle***  Value in ms. ms1 corresponds to 1ms, ms2 corresponds to 2ms, and so on. |
| ***drx-ShortCycleTimer***  Value in multiples of *drx-ShortCycle*. A value of 1 corresponds to *drx-ShortCycle*, a value of 2 corresponds to 2 \* *drx-ShortCycle* and so on. |
| ***drx-SlotOffset***  Value in ms. ms0 corresponds to 0ms, ms1-32 corresponds to 1/32ms, ms2-32 corresponds to 2/32ms, and so on. |
| ***logicalChannelSR-DelayTimer***  Value in number of subframes. sf1 corresponds to one subframe, sf2 corresponds to 2 subframes, and so on. |
| ***multiplePHR***  Indicates if power headroom shall be reported using the Single PHR MAC control element or Multiple PHR MAC control element defined in TS 38.321 [3]. True means to use Multiple PHR MAC control element and False means to use the Single PHR MAC control element defined in TS 38.321 [3]. |
| ***phr-Tx-PowerFactorChange***  Value in dBf or PHR reporting as specified in TS 38.321 [3]. Value dB1 corresponds to 1 dB, dB3 corresponds to 3 dB and so on. The same value applies for each serving cell (although the associated functionality is performed independently for each cell). |
| ***phr-ModeOtherCG***  FFS |
| ***phr-PeriodicTimer***  Value in number of subframes for PHR reporting as specified in TS 38.321 [3]. sf10 corresponds to 10 subframes, sf20 corresonds to 20 subframes, and so on. |
| ***phr-ProhibitTimer***  Value in number of subframes for PHR reporting as specified in TS 38.321 [3]. sf0 corresponds to 0 subframe, sf10 corresponds to 10 subframes, sf20 corresponds to 20 subframes, and so on. |
| ***phr-Type2PCell***  Indicates whether or not PHR type 2 is reported for the PCell |
| ***phr-Type2OtherCell***  Indicates whether or not PHR type 2 is reported for the PSCell and PUCCH SCells. |
| ***skipUplinkTxDynmaic***  Indicates whether If configured, the UE skips UL transmissions for an uplink grant other than a configured uplink grant if no data is available for transmission in the UE buffer as described in TS 38.321 [3]. |
| ***timeAlignmentTimer***  Value in ms of the *timeAlignmentTimer* for TAG with ID 0 (SpCell) or with ID *tag-Id*, as specified in TS 38.321 [3]. |

#### – *MeasConfig*

The IE *MeasConfig* specifies measurements to be performed by the UE, and covers intra-frequency, inter-frequency and inter-RAT mobility as well as configuration of measurement gaps.

*MeasConfig* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MEAS-CONFIG-START

MeasConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Measurement objects

measObjectToRemoveList MeasObjectToRemoveList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

measObjectToAddModList MeasObjectToAddModList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Reporting configurations

reportConfigToRemoveList ReportConfigToRemoveList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

reportConfigToAddModList ReportConfigToAddModList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Measurement identities

measIdToRemoveList MeasIdToRemoveList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

measIdToAddModList MeasIdToAddModList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Other parameters

-- s-Measure config

s-MeasureConfig CHOICE {

ssb-RSRP RSRP-Range,

csi-RSRP RSRP-Range

} OPTIONAL, -- Need M

quantityConfig QuantityConfig OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Placehold for measGapConfig

measGapConfig MeasGapConfig OPTIONAL -- Need M

}

MeasObjectToRemoveList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofObjectId)) OF MeasObjectId

MeasIdToRemoveList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofMeasId)) OF MeasId

ReportConfigToRemoveList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofReportConfigId)) OF ReportConfigId

-- TAG-MEAS-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether UE speed based TTT scaling (e.g. speedStatePars) is supported in Rel-15.

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether measScaleFactor (or equivalent) is supported in Rel-15.

Editor’s Note: FFS How to support allowInterruptions in NR (RAN4 input needed) in Rel-15.

Editor’s Note: FFS where to add RLM related parameters: rlm-ResourceConfigCSI-RS, rlm-ResourceConfigSS

| *MeasConfig* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***measGapConfig***  FFS Definition of measurement gaps in NR. |
| ***measIdToAddModList***  List of measurement identities. |
| ***measIdToRemoveList***  List of measurement identities to remove. |
| ***measObjectToAddModList***  List of measurement objects to add and/or modify. |
| ***measObjectToRemoveList***  List of measurement objects to remove. |
| ***reportConfigToRemoveList***  List of measurement reporting configurations to remove. |
| ***s-MeasureConfig***  Threshold for PCell or PSCell (when UE is in EN-DC) RSRP measurement controlling when the UE is required to perform measurements associated to neighbouring cells. Choice of *ssb-RSRP* corresponds to cell RSRP based on SS/PBCH block and choice of *csi-RSRP* corresponds to cell RSRP of CSI-RS. |

#### – *MeasId*

The IE *MeasId* is used to identify a measurement configuration, i.e., linking of a measurement object and a reporting configuration.

*MeasId* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MEAS-ID-START

MeasId ::= INTEGER (1..maxMeasIdmaxNrofMeasId)

-- TAG-MEAS-ID-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *MeasIdToAddModList*

The IE *MeasIdToAddModList* concerns a list of measurement identities to add or modify, with for each entry the measId, the associated *measObjectId* and the associated *reportConfigId*.

*MeasIdToAddModList* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MEAS-ID-TO-ADD-MOD-LIST-START

MeasIdToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofMeasId)) OF MeasIdToAddMod

MeasIdToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

measId MeasId,

measObjectId MeasObjectId OPTIONAL,

reportConfigId ReportConfigId

}

-- TAG-MEAS-ID-TO-ADD-MOD-LIST-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether measObjectId is an OPTIONAL field or mandatory as in LTE (discuss the implication in procedural text).

#### *– MeasObjectEUTRA*

The IE *MeasObjectEUTRA* specifies information applicable for intra-frequency or inter-frequency E‑UTRA cells.

Editor’s Note: FFS Details of *measObjectEUTRA* that can be configured via NR.

#### *– MeasObjectId*

The IE *MeasObjectId* used to identify a measurement object configuration.

*MeasObjectId* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MEAS-OBJECT-ID-START

MeasObjectId ::= INTEGER (1..maxObjectId)

-- TAG-MEAS-OBJECT-ID-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### *– MeasObjectNR*

The IE *MeasObjectNR* specifies information applicable for SS/PBCH block(s) intra/inter-frequency measurements or CSI-RS intra/inter-frequency measurements.

*MeasObjectNR* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MEAS-OBJECT-NR-START

MeasObjectNR ::= SEQUENCE {

carrierFreq ARFCN-ValueNR,

--RS configuration (e.g. SMTC window, CSI-RS resource, etc.)

referenceSignalConfig ReferenceSignalConfig

--Consolidation of L1 measurements per RS index

absThreshSS-BlocksConsolidation ThresholdNR OPTIONAL, -- Need R

absThreshCSI-RS-Consolidation ThresholdNR OPTIONAL, -- Need R

--Config for cell measurement derivation

nrofSS-BlocksToAverage INTEGER (2..maxNrofSS-BlocksToAverage) OPTIONAL, -- Need R

nrofCSI-RS-ResourcesToAverage INTEGER (2..maxNrofCSI-RS-ResourcesToAverage) OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Filter coefficients applicable to this measurement object

quantityConfigIndex INTEGER (1.. maxNroQuantityConfig),

--Frequency-specific offsets (only for events A3, A6)

offsetFreq Q-OffsetRangeList,

-- Cell list

cellsToRemoveList CellIndexList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

cellsToAddModList CellsToAddModList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Black list

blackCellsToRemoveList CellIndexList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

blackCellsToAddModList BlackCellsToAddModList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- White list

whiteCellsToRemoveList CellIndexList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

whiteCellsToAddModList WhiteCellsToAddModList OPTIONAL -- Need M

-- FFS: Where to include L1 parameters for RSSI measurements (SS-RSSI-MeasurementConfig in L1 table)

}

ReferenceSignalConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

ssb-MeasurementTimingConfiguration SSB-MeasurementTimingConfiguration OPTIONAL, -- Need M

ssb-Presence CHOICE {

present SEQUENCE {

frequencyOffset ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

subcarrierSpacing SubcarrierSpacing

},

notPresent SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: How to inform the UE where else to find the SSB. FFS whether to indicate here a carrier or a cell ID or multiple cell IDs

}

},

-- CSI-RS resources to be used for CSI-RS based RRM measurements

csi-rs-ResourceConfigMobility CSI-RS-ResourceConfigMobility OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Indicates whether the UE can utilize serving cell timing to derive the index of SS block transmitted by neighbour cell:

useServingCellTimingForSync BOOLEAN

}

-- A measurement timing configuration

SSB-MeasurementTimingConfiguration ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Primary measurement timing configuration. Applicable for intra- and inter-frequency measurements.

smtc1 SEQUENCE {

-- Periodicity and offset of the measurement window in which to receive SS/PBCH blocks.

-- Periodicity and offset are given in number of subframes.

-- FFS\_FIXME: This does not match the L1 parameter table! They seem to intend an index to a hidden table in L1 specs.

-- (see 38.213, section REF):

periodicityAndOffset CHOICE {

sf5 INTEGER (0..4),

sf10 INTEGER (0..9),

sf20 INTEGER (0..19),

sf40 INTEGER (0..39),

sf80 INTEGER (0..79),

sf160 INTEGER (0..159)

},

-- Duration of the measurement window in which to receive SS/PBCH blocks. It is given in number of subframes

-- (see 38.213, section 4.1)

-- FFS: RAN1 discusses additional allowed durations:

duration ENUMERATED { sf1, sf2, sf3, sf4, sf5 },

-- The set of SS blocks to be measured within the SMTC measurement duration.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SSB-measured' (see FFS\_Spec, section FFS\_Section)

-- When the field is absent the UE measures on all SS-blocks

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is this IE placed correctly.

ssb-ToMeasure SetupRelease {

CHOICE {

-- bitmap for sub 3 GHz

shortBitmap BIT STRING (SIZE (4)),

-- bitmap for 3-6 GHz

mediumBitmap BIT STRING (SIZE (8)),

-- bitmap for above 6 GHz

longBitmap BIT STRING (SIZE (64))

}

} OPTIONAL -- Need M

},

-- Secondary measurement timing confguration for explicitly signalled PCIs. It uses the offset and duration from smtc1.

-- It is supported only for intra-frequency measurements in RRC CONNECTED.

smtc2 SEQUENCE {

-- PCIs that are known to follow this SMTC.

pci-List SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofPCIsPerSMTC)) OF PhysicalCellId OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Periodicity for the given PCIs. Timing offset and Duration as provided in smtc1.

iperiodicityperiodicity ENUMERATED {sf5, sf10, sf20, sf40, sf80, sf160, spare2, spare1}

} OPTIONAL -- Cond IntraFreqConnected

}

CSI-RS-ResourceConfigMobility ::= SEQUENCE {

-- MO specific values

csi-rs-MeasurementBW SEQUENCE {

-- Size of the measurement BW in PRBs

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-RS-measurementBW-size' (see FFS\_Spec, section FFS\_Section)

nrofPRBs ENUMERATED { size24, size48, size96, size192, size268},

-- Starting PRB index of the measurement bandwidth

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CSI-RS-measurement-BW-start' (see FFS\_Spec, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_Value: Upper edge of value range unclear in RAN1

startPRB INTEGER(0..251),

-- Each CSI-RS resource may be associated with one SSB. If such SSB is indicated, the NW also indicates whether the UE may assume

-- quasi-colocation of this SSB with this CSI-RS reosurce.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Associated-SSB' (see FFS\_Spec, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS: What does the UE do if it there is no such SSB-Index?

associatedSSB SEQUENCE {

-- FFS\_Value: Check the value range

ssb-Index SSB-Index OPTIONAL,

-- The CSI-RS resource is either QCL’ed not QCL’ed with the associated SSB in spatial parameters

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'QCLed-SSB' (see FFS\_Spec, section FFS\_Section)

isQuasiColocated BOOLEAN

},

isServingCellMO BOOLEAN

},

-- subcarrier spacing of CSI-RS. It can take the same values available also for the data channels and for SSB

subcarrierSpacing SubcarrierSpacing,

-- FFS\_Description.

-- FFS\_CHECK: Should this be in the resource-config (here) or in the resource (below)?

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Common-PRB-Grid-offset' (see FFS\_Spec, section FFS\_Section)

prb-GridOffset INTEGER (0..maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocksTimes4) OPTIONAL,

-- List of resources

csi-rs-ResourceList-Mobility SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCSI-RS-ResourcesRRM)) OF CSI-RS-Resource-Mobility

}

CSI-RS-Resource-Mobility ::= SEQUENCE {

csi-rs-ResourceId-RRM CSI-RS-ResourceId-RRM,

cellId PhysicalCellId,

-- FFS\_CHECK whether the following fields are supposed to be per resource (here) or in the resource config (above)

-- Contains periodicity and slot offset for periodic/semi-persistent CSI-RS (see 38.211, section x.x.x.x)FFS\_Ref

slotConfig CHOICE {

ms5 INTEGER (0..4),

ms10 INTEGER (0..9),

ms20 INTEGER (0..19),

ms40 INTEGER (0..39)

},

-- Resource Element mapping pattern for CSI-RS (see 38.211, section x.x.x.x) FFS\_Ref

resourceElementMappingPattern ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- Sequence generation parameter for CSI-RS (see 38.211, section x.x.x.x) FFS\_Ref

sequenceGenerationConfig INTEGER (0..1023),

-- Frequency domain density for the 1-port CSI-RS for L3 mobility

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Density' (see FFS\_Spec, section FFS\_Section)

density ENUMERATED {d1,d3} OPTIONAL,

...

}

CSI-RS-ResourceId-RRM ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofCSI-RS-ResourcesRRM-1)

Q-OffsetRangeList ::= SEQUENCE {

rsrpOffsetSSB Q-OffsetRange DEFAULT dB0,

rsrqOffsetSSB Q-OffsetRange DEFAULT dB0,

sinrOffsetSSB Q-OffsetRange DEFAULT dB0,

rsrpOffsetCSI-RS Q-OffsetRange DEFAULT dB0,

rsrqOffsetCSI-RS Q-OffsetRange DEFAULT dB0,

sinrOffsetCSI-RS Q-OffsetRange DEFAULT dB0

}

ThresholdNR ::= SEQUENCE{

thresholdRSRP RSRP-Range OPTIONAL,

thresholdRSRQ RSRQ-Range OPTIONAL,

thresholdSINR SINR-Range OPTIONAL

}

CellsToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCellMeas)) OF CellsToAddMod

CellsToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

cellIndex INTEGER (1..maxNrofCellMeas),

physCellId PhysCellId,

cellIndividualOffset Q-OffsetRangeList

}

BlackCellsToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCellMeas)) OF BlackCellsToAddMod

BlackCellsToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

cellIndex INTEGER (1..maxNrofCellMeas),

physCellIdRange PhysCellIdRange

}

WhiteCellsToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCellMeas)) OF WhiteCellsToAddMod

WhiteCellsToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

cellIndex INTEGER (1..maxNrofCellMeas),

physCellIdRange PhysCellIdRange

}

-- TAG-MEAS-OBJECT-NR-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

Editor’s Note: FFS How to support CGI reporting and whether changes are required in MeasObjectNR (e.g. introduction of cellForWhichToReportCGI)

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether alternative TTT is supported in Rel-15.

Editor’s Note: FFS measCycleSCell.

Editor’s Note: FFS reducedMeasPerformance.

Editor’s Note: FFS Whether *offsetFreq* within *measObject* can be set differently for CSI-RS and SS/PBCH block.

| *MeasObjectNR* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***absThreshCSI-RS-Consolidation***  Absolute threshold for the consolidation of measurement results per CSI-RS resource(s) from L1 filter(s). The values above the threshold are used as input to the derivation of cell measurement results as described in 5.3.x and the L3 filter(s) per CSI-RS resource as described in 5.5.3.2. |
| ***absThreshSS-BlocksConsolidation***  Absolute threshold for the consolidation of measurement results per SS/PBCH block(s) from L1 filter(s). The values above the threshold are used as input to the derivation of cell measurement results as described in 5.3.x and the L3 filter(s) per SS/PBCH block index as described in 5.5.3.2. |
| ***blackCellsToAddModList***  List of cells to add/modify in the black list of cells. |
| ***blackCellsToRemoveList***  List of cells to remove from the black list of cells. |
| ***carrierFreq***  Identifies NR carrier frequency for which this configuration is valid. |
| ***cellIndex***  Entry index in the cell list. An entry may concern a range of cells, in which case this value applies to the entire range. |
| ***cellIndividualOffset***  Cell individual offsets applicable to a specific cell. |
| ***cellsToAddModList***  List of cells to add/modify in the cell list. |
| ***cellsToRemoveList***  List of cells to remove from the cell list. |
| ***nrofCSInrofCSI-RS-ResourcesToAverage***  Indicates the maximum number of measurement results per beam based on CSI-RS resources to be averaged. The same value applies for each detected cell in that carrierFreq. |
| ***nrofSSnrofSS-BlocksToAverage***  Indicates the maximum number of measurement results per beam based on SS/PBCH blocks to be averaged. The same value applies for each detected cell in that carrierFreq. |
| ***offsetFreq***  Offset values applicable to the carrier frequency. |
| ***physCellId***  Physical cell identity of a cell in the cell list. |
| ***physCellIdRange***  Physical cell identity or a range of physical cell identities. |
|  |
|  |
| ***whiteCellsToAddModList***  List of cells to add/modify in the white list of cells. |
| ***whiteCellsToRemoveList***  List of cells to remove from the white list of cells. |

#### – *MeasObjectToAddModList*

The IE *MeasObjectToAddModList* concerns a list of measurement objects to add or modify.

*MeasObjectToAddModList* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MEAS-OBJECT-TO-ADD-MOD-LIST-START

MeasObjectToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofObjectId)) OF MeasObjectToAddMod

MeasObjectToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

measObjectId MeasObjectId,

measObject CHOICE {

measObjectNR MeasObjectNR,

measObjectEUTRA MeasObjectEUTRA

}

}

-- TAG-MEAS-OBJECT-TO-ADD-MOD-LIST-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *MeasResults*

The IE *MeasResults* covers measured results for intra-frequency, inter-frequency, and inter-RAT mobility.

*MeasResults* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MEAS-RESULTS-START

MeasResults ::= SEQUENCE {

measId MeasId,

measResultServingFreqList MeasResultServFreqList,

measResultNeighCells CHOICE {

measResultListNR MeasResultListNR,

measResultListEUTRA MeasResultListEUTRA,

...

} OPTIONAL

}

MeasResultServFreqList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofServingCellsmaxNrofServingCells)) OF MeasResultServFreq

MeasResultServFreq ::= SEQUENCE {

servFreqId ServCellIndex

measResultServingCell MeasResultNR,

measResultBestNeighCell MeasResultNR

}

MeasResultListNR ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxCellReport)) OF MeasResultNR

MeasResultNR ::= SEQUENCE {

physCellId PhysCellId OPTIONAL,

--FFS: Details of cgi info

cgi-Info ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue} OPTIONAL,,

measResult SEQUENCE {

cellResults SEQUENCE{

resultsSSB-Cell ResultsSSB-CellResultsSSB-Cell OPTIONAL,

resultsCSI-RS-Cell ResultsCSI-RS-Cell OPTIONAL

},

rsIndexResults SEQUENCE{

resultsSSB-Indexes ResultsPerSSB-IndexList OPTIONAL,

resultsCSI-RS-Indexes ResultsPerCSI-RS-IndexList OPTIONAL

} OPTIONAL

}

}

ResultsSSB-CellCell ::= SEQUENCE {

ssb-Cellrsrp RSRP-Range OPTIONAL,

ssb-Cellrsrq RSRQ-Range OPTIONAL,

ssb-Cellsinr SINR-Range OPTIONAL

}

ResultsCSI-RS-Cell ::= SEQUENCE {

csi-rs-CellRSRP RSRP-Range OPTIONAL,

csi-rs-CellRSRQ RSRQ-Range OPTIONAL,

csi-rs-CellSINR SINR-Range OPTIONAL

}

ResultsPerSSB-IndexList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSSBs)) OF ResultsPerSSB-Index

ResultsPerSSB-Index ::= SEQUENCE {

ssb-Index SSB-Index,

ss-RSRP RSRP-Range OPTIONAL,

ss-RSRQ RSRQ-Range OPTIONAL,

ss-SINR SINR-Range OPTIONAL

}

ResultsPerCSI-RS-IndexList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCSI-RS)) OF ResultsPerCSI-RS-Index

ResultsPerCSI-RS-Index ::= SEQUENCE {

csi-rs-IndexIndex CSI-RS-IndexIndex,

csi-RSRP RSRP-Range OPTIONAL,

csi-RSRQ RSRQ-Range OPTIONAL,

csi-SINR SINR-Range OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-MEAS-RESULTS-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

Editor’s Note: FFS *locationInfo*.

| *MeasResults* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***csi-rs-CellRSRP***  Measured RSRP result per NR cell based on CSI-RSRP value(s) from the L1 filter(s). |
| ***csi-rs-CellRSRQ***  Measured RSRQ result per NR cell based on CSI-RSRQ value(s) from the L1 filter(s). |
| ***csi-rs-CellSINR***  Measured SINR result per NR cell based on CSI-SINR value(s) from the L1 filter(s). |
| ***csi-rs-Index***  CSI-RS resource index associated to the measurement information to be reported. |
| ***csi-RSRP***  L3 filtered CSI-RSRP measurement per CSI-RS resource index, as defined in 5.5.4.x. CSI-RSRP is defined in TS 38.215 [9]. |
| ***csi-RSRQ***  L3 filtered CSI-RSRQ measurement per CSI-RS resource index, as defined in 5.5.4.x. CSI-RSRQ is defined in TS 38.215 [9]. |
| ***csi-SINR***  L3 filtered CSI-SINR measurement per CSI-RS resource index, as defined in 5.5.4.x. CSI-SINR is defined in TS 38.215 [9]. |
| ***measId***  Identifies the measurement identity for which the reporting is being performed. |
| ***measResult***  Measured results of an NR cell. |
| ***measResultListNR***  List of measured results for the maximum number of reported best cells for an NR measurement identity. |
| ***measResultServingFreqList***  Measured results of the serving frequencies including measurement results of PCell, configured SCell(s) and best neighbouring cell on each serving frequency. |
| ***resultsCSI-RS-Indexes***  List of measurement information per CSI-RS resource index of an NR cell. |
| ***resultsSSB-Indexes***  List of measurement information per SS/PBCH index of an NR cell. |
| ***resultsCSI-RS-Cell***  Cell level measurement results (e.g. RSRP, RSRQ, SINR) to be reported derived from CSI-RS measurements. |
| ***resultSSB-Cell***  Cell level measurement results (e.g. RSRP, RSRQ, SINR) to be reported derived on SS/PBCH block measurements. |
| ***ssb-CellRSRP***  Measured RSRP result per NR cell based on SS-RSRP value(s) from the L1 filter(s). |
| ***ssb-CellRSRQ***  Measured RSRQ result of an NR Cell based on SS-RSRP value(s) from the L1 filter(s). |
| ***ssb-CellSINR***  Measured SS-SINR result of an NR Cell based on SS-SINR value(s) from the L1 filter(s).. |
| ***ssb-Index***  SS/PBCH block index associated to the measurement information to be reported. |
| ***ss-rsrp***  L3 filtered SS-RSRP measurement per SS/PBCH block index, as defined in 5.5.4.x. SS-RSRP is defined in TS 38.215 [9]. |
| ***ss-rsrq***  L3 filtered SS-RSRQ measurement per SS/PBCH block index, as defined in 5.5.4.x. SS-RSRQ is defined in TS 38.215 [9]. |
| ***ss-sinr***  L3 filtered SS-SINR measurement per SS/PBCH block index, as defined in 5.5.4.x. SS-SINR is defined in TS 38.215 [9]. |

#### – *PDCCH-Config*

The *PDCCH-Config* IE is used to configure UE specific PDCCH parameters such as control resource sets (CORESET), search spaces and additional parameters for acquiring the PDCCH.

*PDCCH-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-PDCCH-CONFIG-START

PDCCH-ConfigCommon ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Search space for other system information, i.e., SIB2 and beyond. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'osi-SearchSpace' (see 38.213, section 10)

-- FFS: Must indicate the CORESET(s) that it is associated with. Must indicate the RNTI(s) to use (note that RAN2 intends to allow

-- several in order to be able to send several SI messages in a the same slot. Is it limited to certain CORESETs and or BWPs?

-- (e.g. on the initial CSS or on a CSS configured in the dedicated BWP?). Is the field optional? What does the UE do if it is not present?

searchSpaceOtherSystemInformation FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Search space for paging. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'paging-SearchSpace' (see 38.213, section 10)

-- FFS: Which BWP and CORESET to assume?

-- FFS: Need to configure P-RNTI? Or is it specified? Can one just instantiate a common search space?

pagingSearchSpace FFS\_Value OPTIONAL

}

PDCCH-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

-- List of Control Resource Sets (CORESETs) to be used by the UE

controlResourceSetToAddModList SEQUENCE(SIZE (1..maxNrofControlResourceSets)) OF ControlResourceSet OPTIONAL,

controlResourceSetToReleaseList SEQUENCE(SIZE (1..maxNrofControlResourceSets)) OF ControlResourceSetId OPTIONAL,

-- FFS: RAN1 decided to model each RNTI which the UE monitors on PDCCH as a separate Search Space. Many of those are configured

-- in the respective feature/channel configurations (e.g. CSI-RNTI, TPC-PUSCH-RNTI, TPC-PUCCH-RNTI, SPS-RNTI). Others are configured

-- below (SFI-RNTI, INT-RNTI). ==> Aim to find a common generic structure.

searchSpacesToAddModList SEQUENCE(SIZE (1..maxNrofSearchSpaces)) OF SearchSpace OPTIONAL,

searchSpacesToReleaseList SEQUENCE(SIZE (1..maxNrofSearchSpaces)) OF SearchSpaceId OPTIONAL,

-- Configuration of downlink preemtption indications to be monitored in this cell

-- FFS: Can there be just one or multiple such configurations within a PDCCH-Config? How does it relate to BWP, CORESET(s)?

downlinkPreemption DownlinkPreemption OPTIONAL,

-- Configuration of Slot-Format-Indicators to be monitored in this cell

-- FFS: Can there be just one or multiple such configurations within a PDCCH-Config? How does it relate to BWP, CORESET(s)?

slotFormatIndicator SlotFormatIndicator OPTIONAL,

-- FFS: Is this timing information applicable to the entire PDCCH or could it be different per CORESET?

-- FFS: Is there a default timing (to be used at least until first reconfiguration). Are the fields optionally present?

timing SEQUENCE {

-- Configuration value of DL assignment to DL data timing

dl-AssignmentToDL-Data SEQUENCE {

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'K0' (see 38.214, section 5.1.2.1)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 0

k0 INTEGER (0..3) OPTIONAL, -- Need S

5.1.2.1

-- PDSCH mapping type. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Mapping-type' (see 38.214, section 5.1.2.1)

mappingType ENUMERATED {typeA, typeB} OPTIONAL,

-- An index into a table/equation in RAN1 specs capturing valid combinations of start symbol and length (jointly encoded)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Index-start-len' (see 38.214, section 5.1.2.1)

startSymbolAndLength BIT STRING (SIZE (6)),

-- FFS\_Description. (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

index INTEGER (0..15) OPTIONAL

},

-- Configuration value of UL assignment to UL data timing

ul-AssignmentToUL-Data SEQUENCE {

-- FFS\_Description. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'K2' (see 38.214, section 6.1.2.1)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 0

k2 INTEGER (0..7) OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Number of repetition for data. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'aggregation-factor-UL' (see 38.214, section 6.1.2.1)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 1

aggregationFactorUL ENUMERATED {n1, n2, n4, n8} OPTIONAL -- Need S

},

-- Configuration value of DL assignment to DL acknowledgement

dl-DataToUL-ACK SEQUENCE (SIZE (8)) OF SEQUENCE {

-- Timiing for given PDSCH to the DL ACK

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Slot-timing-value-K1' (see 38.213, section 9.2.3)

slotTimingValueK1 INTEGER (0..15) OPTIONAL

}

} OPTIONAL

}

-- A time/frequency control resource set (CORESET) in which to search for downlink control information (see 38.213, section x.x.x.x)FFS\_Ref

ControlResourceSet ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CORESET-ID'

controlResourceSetId ControlResourceSetId,

-- Frequency domain resources for the CORESET. Each bit corresponds a group of 6 RBs, with grouping starting from PRB 0, which is fully contained in the bandwidth part within which the CORESET is configured. The most significant bit corresponds to the group of lowest frequency which is fully contained in the bandwidth part within which the CORESET is configured, each next subsequent lower significance bit corresponds to the next lowest frequency group fully contained within the bandwidth part within which the CORESET is configured, if any. Bits corresponding to a group not fully contained within the bandwidth part within which the CORESET is configured are set to zero.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CORESET-freq-dom'(see 38.211, section 7.3.2.2)

frequencyDomainResources BIT STRING (SIZE (45)),,

-- Contiguous time duration of the CORESET in number of symbols

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CORESET-time-duration' (see 38.211, section 7.3.2.2FFS\_Section)

duration INTEGER (1..maxCoReSetDuration),

-- Resource Element Groups (REGs) can be bundled to create REG bundles. This parameter defines the size of such bundles.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CORESET-REG-bundle-size' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

reg-BundleSize ENUMERATED {n2, n3, n6},

-- Mapping of Control Channel Elements (CCE) to Resource Element Groups (REG).

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CORESET-CCE-REG-mapping-type' (see 38.211Section sections 7.3.2.2 and 7.4.1.3.2)

cce-REG-MappingType ENUMERATED { interleaved, nonInterleaved },

-- Precoder granularity in frequency domain. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CORESET-precoder-granuality' (see 38.211, sections 7.3.2.2 and 7.4.1.3.2)

precoderGranularity ENUMERATED {sameAsREG-bundle, allContiguousRBs},

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CORESET-interleaver-size' (see 38.211, 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

interleaverSize ENUMERATED {n2, n3, n6} OPTIONAL,

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CORESET-shift-index' (see 38.211, section 7.3.2.2)

shiftIndex INTEGER(0..maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks-1) OPTIONAL,

-- A subset of the TCI states defined in TCI-States used for providing QCL relationships between the DL RS(s) in one RS Set

-- (TCI-RS-Set) and the PDCCH DMRS ports. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TCI-StatesPDCCH' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_Description: Explains what the UE does with each TCI-RS-SetConfig.

-- FFS\_Value: Shouldn’t this be just a list of indexes? I.e., aren’t the set-configs provided elsewhere?

tci-StatesPDCCH SEQUENCE(SIZE (1..maxNrofTCI-StatesPDCCH)) OF TCI-RS-SetId OPTIONAL,

-- If at least spatial QCL is configured/indicated, this field indicates if TCI field is present or not present in DL-related DCI.

-- When the field is absent the UE considers the TCI to be absent/disabled.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TCI-PresentInDCI' (see 38,213, section 5.1.5)

tci-PresentInDCI ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- PDCCH DMRS scrambling initalization. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PDCCH-DMRS-Scrambling-ID' (see 38.214, section 5.1)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value '0'.

pdcch-DMRS-ScramblingID BIT STRING (SIZE (16)) OPTIONAL -- Need S

}

-- ID of a Control Resource Set.

ControlResourceSetId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofControlResourceSets-1)

-- A search space defines how/where to search for PDCCH candidates. A search space is associated with one Control Resource Set

SearchSpace ::= SEQUENCE {

searchSpaceId SearchSpaceId,

-- The CORESET applicable for this SearchSpace.

-- FFS: Value 0 identifies the common CORESET configured in MIB and in ServingCellConfigCommon?

-- FFS: Values 1..maxNrofControlResourceSets-1 identify CORESETs configured by dedicated signalling?

controlResourceSetId ControlResourceSetId,

-- Slots for PDCCH Monitoring configured as periodicity and offset. Corresponds to L1 parameters 'Montoring-periodicity-PDCCH-slot' and

-- 'Montoring-offset-PDCCH-slot' (see 38.213, section 10)

-- sl15, sl10, sl20 FFS

monitoringSlotPeriodicityAndOffset CHOICE {

sl1 NULL,

sl2 INTEGER (0..1),

sl5 INTEGER (0..4),

sl10 INTEGER (0..9),

sl20 INTEGER (0..19)

} OPTIONAL,

-- Symbols for PDCCH monitoring in the slots configured for PDCCH monitoring (see monitoringSlotPeriodicityAndOffset).

-- The most significant (left) bit represents the first OFDM in a slot. The least significant (right) bit represents the last symbol.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Montoring-symbols-PDCCH-within-slot' (see 38.213, section 10)

monitoringSymbolsWithinSlot BIT STRING (SIZE (14)) OPTIONAL,

-- Number of candidates per aggregation level. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Aggregation-level-1' to 'Aggregation-level-8'

-- (see 38.213, section 10)

nrofCandidates SEQUENCE {

aggregationLevel1 ENUMERATED {n0, n1, n2, n3, n4, n5, n6, n8},

aggregationLevel2 ENUMERATED {n0, n1, n2, n3, n4, n5, n6, n8},

aggregationLevel4 ENUMERATED {n0, n1, n2, n3, n4, n5, n6, n8},

aggregationLevel8 ENUMERATED {n0, n1, n2, n3, n4, n5, n6, n8},

aggregationLevel16 ENUMERATED {n0, n1, n2, n3, n4, n5, n6, n8}

},

-- Indicates whether this is a common search space (present) or a UE specific search space.

-- FFS: How many CSSs can the NW configure? And can a CSS only be in the common CORESET?

searchSpaceType CHOICE {

common SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Parameters that are applicable for CSS?

},

ue-Specific SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Parameters that are applicable only for USS?

}

} OPTIONAL -- Need M

}

SearchSpaceId ::= INTEGER (1..maxNrofSearchSpaces)

-- Configuration of monitoring a Group-Common-PDCCH for Slot-Format-Indicators (SFI)

SlotFormatIndicatorSFI ::= SEQUENCE {

searchSpace SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: RAN1 indicates that the UE uses the ”CSS” if no CORESET is provided. But a CSS is not the same as a CORESET?!?!!

controlResourceSetId ControlResourceSetId OPTIONAL,

-- RNTI used for SFI on the given cell

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SFI-RNTI' (see 38.213, section 11.1.1)

sfi-RNTI RNTI-Value OPTIONAL,

-- Monitoring periodicity of SFI PDCCH in slots.

-- o For 15KHz SCS (slots based on 15kHz): 1, 2, 5, 10, 20

-- o For 30KHz SCS (slots based on 30kHz): 1, 2, 4, 5, 10, 20

-- o For 60KHz SCS (slots based on 60kHz): 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 10, 20

-- o For 120KHz SCS (slots based on 120kHz): 1, 2, 4, 5, 10, 20

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SFI-monitoring-periodicity' (see 38.213, section 11.1.1)

monitoringPeriodicity ENUMERATED {sl1, sl2, sl4, sl5, sl8, sl10, sl20, spare1} OPTIONAL,

-- The number of PDCCH candidates for the configured aggregation level.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SFI-Num-PDCCH-cand' (see 38.213, section 11.1.1)

nrofCandidates ENUMERATED {n1, n2},

-- The aggregation level for the SFI-PDCCH. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SFI-Aggregation-Level' (see 38.213, section 11.1.1)

aggregationLevel ENUMERATED {n1, n2, n4, n8, n16}

},

-- Total length of the DCI payload scrambled with SFI-RNTI.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SFI-DCI-payload-length' (see 38.213, section 11.1.1)

dci-PayloadSize INTEGER (1..maxSFI-DCI-PayloadSize) OPTIONAL,

-- A list of SlotFormatCombinations for the UE's serving cells.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SFI-cell-to-SFI' (see 38.213, section 11.1.1)

slotFormatConfigurations SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxNrofAggregatedCellsPerCellGroup)) OF SlotFormatCombinationsPerCell OPTIONAL,

...

}

-- The SlotFormatCombinations applicable for one serving cell. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'cell-to-SFI' (see 38.213, section 11.1.1)

SlotFormatCombinationsPerCell ::= SEQUENCE {

-- The ID of the serving cell for which the slotFormatCombinations are applicable

servingCellId ServCellIndex,

-- A list with SlotFormatCombinations. Each SlotFormatCombination comprises of one or more SlotFormats (see 38.211, section 4.3.2)

-- FFS\_CHECK: RAN1 indicates that the combinations could be of two different types... but they don't specify the second

slotFormatCombinations SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSlotFormatCombinationsPerSet)) OF SlotFormatCombination OPTIONAL,

-- The (starting) position (bit) of the slotFormatCombinationId (SFI-Index) for this serving cell (servingCellId) within the DCI payload.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SFI-values' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

positionInDCI INTEGER(0..maxSFI-DCI-PayloadSize-1) OPTIONAL

}

SlotFormatCombination ::= SEQUENCE {

-- This ID is used in the DCI payload to dynamically select this SlotFormatCombination.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SFI-index' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

slotFormatCombinationId SlotFormatCombinationId,

-- Slot formats that occur in consecutive slots in time domain order as listed here. The the slot formats are

-- defined in 38.211, table 4.3.2-3 and numbered with 0..255.

slotFormats SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSlotFormatsPerCombination)) OF INTEGER (0..255)

}

-- SFI index that is assoicated with a certian slot-format-combination

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SFI-index' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

SlotFormatCombinationId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofSlotFormatCombinationsPerSet-1)

-- Configuration of downlink preemption indication on PDCCH

-- FFS: How does it relate to a BWP? How is it linked to one (or several) CORESETs?

DownlinkPreemption ::= SEQUENCE {

searchSpace SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Need to indicate the CORESET(s) on which to apply the INT-RNTI SearchSpace!?

controlResourceSetId ControlResourceSetId OPTIONAL,

-- RNTI used for indication pre-emption in DL. Also connected to monitoring of a Type2-PDCCH common search space.

-- (see 38.213, section 10)

-- FFS: What does the abbreviation stand for? Add a better description

int-RNTI RNTI-Value,

-- Set selection for DL-preemption indication. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'int-TF-unit' (see 38.213, section 10.1)

-- FFS: Clarify description. Clarify what TF means. Clarify field name.

timeFrequencySet ENUMERATED {set0, set1},

-- Monitoring periodicity of DCI with INT-RNTI in number of slots. sl1 corresponds to ”every slot”, s2 corresponds to ”every second slot”.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'INT-monitoring-periodicity' (see 38.213, section 11.2)

monitoringPeriodicity ENUMERATED {sl1, sl2, spare2, spare1} OPTIONAL

},

-- Total length of the DCI payload scrambled with INT-RNTI. The value must be an integer multiple of 14 bit.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'INT-DCI-payload-length' (see 38.213, section 11.2)

dci-PayloadSize INTEGER (0..maxINT-DCI-PayloadSize) OPTIONAL,

-- Indicates (per serving cell) the position of the 14 bit INT values inside the DCI payload.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'INT-cell-to-INT' and 'cell-to-INT' (see 38.213, section 11.2)

int-ConfigurationPerServingCell SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofServingCells)) OF SEQUENCE {

servingCellId ServCellIndex,

-- Starting position (in number of bit) of the 14 bit INT value applicable for this serving cell (servingCellId) within the DCI

-- payload. Must be multiples of 14 (bit). Corresponds to L1 parameter 'INT-values' (see 38.213, section 11.2)

positionInDCI INTEGER (0..maxINT-DCI-PayloadSize-1)

} OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-PDCCH-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *PDCP-Config*

The IE *PDCP-Config* is used to set the configurable PDCP parameters for signalling and data radio bearers.

*PDCP-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-PDCP-CONFIG-START

PDCP-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

drb SEQUENCE {

discardTimer ENUMERATED {ms10, ms20, ms30, ms40, ms50, ms60, ms75, ms100, ms150, ms200, ms250, ms300, ms500, ms750, ms1500, infinity} OPTIONAL, -- Cond Setup

pdcp-SN-Size-UL ENUMERATED {len12bits, len18bits},

pdcp-SN-Size-DL ENUMERATED {len12bits, len18bits},

headerCompression CHOICE {

notUsed NULL,

rohc SEQUENCE {

maxCID INTEGER (1..16383) DEFAULT 15,

profiles SEQUENCE {

profile0x0001 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0002 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0003 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0004 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0006 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0101 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0102 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0103 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0104 BOOLEAN

},

uplinkOnlyROHC SEQUENCE {

maxCID INTEGER (1..16383) DEFAULT 15,

profiles SEQUENCE {

profile0x0006 BOOLEAN

}

},

...

}

},

integrityProtection BOOLEAN,

statusReportRequired BOOLEAN, OPTIONAL -- Cond Rlc-AM

outOfOrderDelivery BOOLEAN

} OPTIONAL, -- Cond DRB

-- FFS / TODO: Handle more than two secondary cell groups

moreThanOneRLC SEQUENCE {

primaryPath SEQUENCE {

cellGroup CellGroupId,

logicalChannel LogicalChannelIdentity

},

ul-DataSplitThreshold CHOICE {

release NULL,

setup ENUMERATED {

b0, b100, b200, b400, b800, b1600, b3200, b6400, b12800, b25600, b51200, b102400, b204800,

b409600, b819200, b1228800, b1638400, b2457600, b3276800, b4096000, b4915200, b5734400,

b6553600, infinity, spare8, spare7, spare6, spare5, spare4, spare3, spare2, spare1}

},

ul-Duplication BOOLEAN

} OPTIONAL, -- Cond MoreThanOneRLC

t-Reordering ENUMERATED {

ms0, ms5, ms10, ms15, ms20, ms30, ms40, ms50, ms60, ms80, ms100, ms120, ms140, ms160, ms180, ms200, ms220,

ms240, ms260, ms280, ms300, ms500, ms750, ms1000, ms1250, ms1500, ms1750, ms2000, ms2250, ms2500, ms2750,

ms3000} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- FFS: whether ms0 is the same like outOfOrderDelivery

-- FFS: new values for t-Reordering

...

}

-- TAG-PDCP-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| *PDCP-Config*field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***discardTimer***  Value in ms of *discardTimer* specified in TS 38.323 [5]. Value ms50 corresponds to 50 ms, ms100 corresponds to 100 ms and so on. |
| ***headerCompression***  If *rohc* is configured, the UE shall apply the configured ROHC profile(s) in both uplink and downlink. If *uplinkOnlyROHC* is configured, the UE shall apply the configure ROHC profile(s) in uplink (there is no header compression in downlink).  FFS: restrictions for split bearers  FFS: restrictions on reconfigurations (e.g. only at reconfiguration involving PDCP re-establishment) |
| ***integrityProtection***  Indicates whether or not integrity protection is configured for this radio bearer.  FFS: text to indicate where to find the key. |
| ***maxCID***  Indicates the value of the MAX\_CID parameter as specified in TS 38.323 [5]  FFS: need to specify something with respect to UE capabilities. |
| ***outOfOrderDelivery***  Indicates whether or not *outOfOrderDelivery* specified in TS 38.323 [5] is configured. |
| ***primaryPath***  Indicates the cell group ID and LCID of the primary RLC entity as specified in TS 38.323 clause 5.2.1 for UL data tranmission when more than one RLC entity is associated with the PDCP entity. |
| ***pdcp-SN-Size***  PDCP sequence number size, 12 or 18 bits. |
| ***statusReportRequired***  For AM DRBs, indicates whether the DRB is configured to send a PDCP status report in the upliink, as specified in TS 38.323 [5]. For UL DRBs, the value shall be ignored by the UE. |
| ***t-Reordering***  Value in ms of t-Reordering specified in TS 38.323 [5]. Value ms0 corresponds to 0ms, value ms20 corresponds to 20ms, value ms40 corresponds to 40ms, and so on. |
| ***ul-DataSplitThreshold***  Parameter specified in TS 38.323 [5]. Value b0 corresponds to 0 bits, value b100 corresponds to 100 bits, value b200 corresponds to 200 bits, and so on. Value Infinity corresponds to a path switch mode operation.  FFS\_FIXME: Clarify what happens upon “release”. And discuss need for value infinity. E.g. “If ul-DataSplitThreshold is set to release, the UL PDCP entity does not deliver data to RLC entities other than the “prioritizedRlc” |
| ***ul-Duplication***  Set to FALSE in this version of the specification. |

| **Conditional presence** | **Explanation** |
| --- | --- |
| *DRB* | This field is mandatory present for DRBs, not present for SRBs. |
| *MoreThanOneRLC* | This field is mandatory present upon RRC reconfiguration with setup of a PDCP entity for a radio bearer with more than one associated logical channel and upon RRC reconfiguration with the association of an additional logical channel to the PDCP entity.  Upon RRC reconfiguration when a PDCP entity is associated with multiple logical channels, this field is optionally present need M. Otherwise, this field is absent and all its included parameters are released. |
| *Rlc-AM* | The field is mandatory present upon setup of a PDCP entity for a radio bearer configured with RLC AM. Otherwise, the field is optionally present, need M. |
| *Setup* | The field is mandatory present in case of radio bearer setup. Otherwise the field is optionally present, need M. |

#### – *PDSCH-Config*

The *PDSCH-Config* IE is used to configure the UE specific PDSCH parameters.

*PDSCH-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-PDSCH-CONFIG-START

PDSCH-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Indicates whether to use code-block-group (CBG) based transmission (see 38.213, section x.x.x.x) FFS\_Ref

-- FFS: Is this BOOLEAN parameter needed or can it be derived from the presence of the codeBlockGroupsPerTransportBlock?

codeBlockGroupTransmission BOOLEAN,

-- Maximum number of code-block-groups (CBGs) per TB. In case of multiple CW the maximum CBG is 4 (see 38.213, section 9.1.1)

maxCodeBlockGroupsPerTransportBlock ENUMERATED {n2, n4, n6, n8},

-- Indicates whether CBGFI for CBG based (re)transmission in DL is enabled (true). (see FFS\_Specification, section FFS\_Section)

codeBlockGroupFlushIndicator BOOLEAN,

dmrs-Downlink SEQUENCE {

-- Selection of the DMRS type to be used for DL (see 38.211, section 7.4.1.1.1)

dmrs-Type ENUMERATED {type1, type2} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Position for additional DM-RS in DL, see Table 7.4.1.1.2-4 in 38.211.

-- The four values represent the cases of 1+0, 1+1, 1+1+1. 1+1+1+1 non-adjacent OFDM symbols for DL.

-- CHECK: Listed in RAN1 table. But should this really be in dedicated signalling?

dmrs-AdditionalPosition ENUMERATED {pos0, pos1, pos2, pos3} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- DM-RS groups that are QCL:ed, i.e. group 1 (see 38.214, section 5.1)

-- FFS CHECK: Clarify how to configure the DMRS groups and the relation to TCI.

-- FFS\_Value: Check whether these are really meant to be these few intergers

dmrs-group1 INTEGER (1000..1011),

-- DM-RS groups that are QCL:ed, i.e. group 2 (see 38.214, section 5.1)

-- FFS\_Value: Check whether these are really meant to be these few intergers

dmrs-group2 INTEGER (1000..1012),

-- The maximum number of OFDM symbols for DL front loaded DMRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-DMRS-max-len' (see 38.214, section 5.1)

maxLength ENUMERATED {len1, len2},

-- DL DMRS scrambling initalization

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-DMRS-Scrambling-ID' (see 38.214, section 5.1)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value "Physical cell ID + 6 fixed bits (e.g. 000000)"

-- FFS: Clarify default value: Are the 6 bits zeros (says e.g.). Are they the MSBs or LSBs?

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is it really 16 bit whereas all other scrambling IDs are just 10 bit? If this is also 10, replace by type ScramblingId

scramblingID BIT STRING (SIZE (16)) OPTIONAL -- Need S

},

-- Configures downlink PTRS .

-- If absent of released, the UE assumes that downlink PTRS are not present. See 38.211 section 7.4.1.2.2

phaseTrackingRS SetupRelease { DownlinkPTRS-Config } OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Contains Transmission Configuration Indicator (TCI) states for dynamically indicating (over DCI) a transmission configuration

-- which includes QCL-relationships between the DL RSs in one RS set and the PDSCH DMRS ports

-- (see 38.214, section 5.1.4)

tci-States SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxNrofTCI-RS-Sets)) OF TCI-RS-Set,

-- Accounts for overhead from CSI-RS, CORESET, etc. FFS: Clarify value range and description.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Xoh-PDSCH' (see 38.214, section 5.1.3.2)

xOverhead FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Interleaving unit configurable between 2 and 4 PRBs

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'VRB-to-PRB-interleaver' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

vrb-ToPRB-Interleaver ENUMERATED {n2, n4} OPTIONAL,

-- Configuration of resource allocation type 0 and resource allocation type 1 for non-fallback DCI

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Resouce-allocation-config' (see 38.214, section 5.1.2)

-- FFS\_Value: Are these values just 3 flags (ENUMERATED) or the actual configurations? If the latter, where are they defined?

resourceAllocation CHOICE {

resourceAllocationType0 NULL,

resourceAllocationType1 NULL,

dynamicSwitch NULL

} OPTIONAL,

-- Indexes to possible symbol allcoations (the indexes point to entries in a UE specific table)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PDSCH-symbol-allocation' (see 38.214, section 5.1.2.1)

pdsch-SymbolAllocation FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Resources that the UE should rate match PDSCH around.

rateMatchResourcesPDSCH SEQUENCE {

-- Resources patterns which the UE should rate match PDSCH around. The UE rate matches around the union of all resources

-- indicated in the nexted bitmaps. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'rate-match-PDSCH-resource-set' (see 38.214, section 5.1.2.2.3)

-- FFS\_ASN1: Consider replacing by AddMod/Release lists

-- FFS: RAN1 indicates that there should be a set of patterns per cell and one per BWP => Having both seems unnecessary.

-- So far it is unclear whether or not the entire PDSCH-Config moves into the BWP configuration.

rateMatchPatterns SetupRelease {

SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofRateMatchPatterns)) OF RateMatchPattern

} OPTIONAL, -- Need M

lte-CRS-ToMatchAround SetupRelease {

SEQUENCE {

-- Center of the LTE carrier. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'center-subcarrier-location' (see 38.214, section 5.1.4)

carrierFreqDL INTEGER (0..maxEARFCN),

-- BW of the LTE carrier in numbewr of PRBs. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'BW' (see 38.214, section 5.1.4)

carrierBandwidthDL ENUMERATED {n6, n15, n25, n50, n75, n100, spare2, spare1},

-- LTE MBSFN subframe configuration. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'MBSFN-subframconfig' (see 38.214, section 5.1.4)

-- FFS\_ASN1: Import the LTE MBSFN-SubframeConfigList

mbsfn-SubframeConfigList OCTET STRING (CONTAINING MBSFN-SubframeConfigList) OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Number of LTE CRS antenna port to rate-match around.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'rate-match-resources-numb-LTE-CRS-antenna-port' (see 38.214, section 5.1.4)

nrofCRS-Ports ENUMERATED {n1, n2, n4},

-- Shifting value v-shift in LTE to rate match around LTE CRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'rate-match-resources-LTE-CRS-v-shift' (see 38.214, section 5.1.4)

v-Shift ENUMERATED {n0, n1, n2, n3, n4, n5} }

} OPTIONAL -- Need M

},

-- Selection between config 1 and config 2 for RBG size for PDSCH. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'RBG-size-PDSCH' (see 38.214, section 5.1.2.2.1)

rbg-Size ENUMERATED {config1, config2},

-- Indicates which MCS table the UE shall use for PDSCH. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'MCS-Table-PDSCH' (see 38.214, section 5.1.3.1).

mcs-Table ENUMERATED {qam64, qam256},

-- Maximum number of code words that a single DCI may schedule. This changes the number of MCS/RV/NDI bits in the DCI message from 1 to 2.

maxNrofCodeWordsScheduledByDCI ENUMERATED {n1, n2} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- The number of HARQ processes to be used on the PDSCH of a serving cell.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'number-HARQ-process-PDSCH' (see 38.214, section REF)

nrofHARQ-ProcessesForPDSCH ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- HARQ-ACK codebook is configured to be either semi-static of dynamic. This is applicable to both CA and none CA operation

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'HARQ-ACK-codebook' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

harq-ACK-Codebook ENUMERATED {semiStatic, dynamic},

-- Bundle size the UE may assume. Corresponds to L1 paramter 'PDSCH-bundle-size' (see 38.211, section 7.3.1.5).

-- If the field is absent, the UE assumes value n2.

-- FFS: Better description

pdsch-BundleSize ENUMERATED {n2, n4, wideband} OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- If set to true, the network indicates the PRB bundle size dynamically via DCI. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PRB\_bundling'

-- (see 38.214, section 5.1.2.3)

prb-BundlingEnabled BOOLEAN,

-- A list of Zero-Power (ZP) CSI-RS resources.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ZP-CSI-RS-ResourceConfigList' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

zp-CSI-RS-Resources SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofZP-CSI-RS-Resources)) OF ZP-CSI-RS-Resource OPTIONAL,

...

}

-- Associates one or two DL reference signals with a corresponding quasi-colocation (QCL) type.

-- FFS: Rename TCI-RS-Set to TCI-State? Would feel more in line with the name of the list: tci-States.

TCI-RS-Set ::= SEQUENCE {

tci-RS-SetId TCI-RS-SetId,

qcl-Type1 SEQUENCE {

referenceSignal CHOICE {

csi-rs NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceConfigId,

ssb SSB-Id,

-- A TRS (Tracking Reference Signal) configuration represented as a set of CSI-RS-Resources in a CSI-ResourceSetId

trs CSI-ResourceSetId

},

qcl-Type ENUMERATED {typeA, typeB, typeC, typeD}

},

qcl-Type2 SEQUENCE {

referenceSignal CHOICE {

csi-rs NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceConfigId,

ssb SSB-Id,

-- A TRS (Tracking Reference Signal) configuration represented as a set of CSI-RS-Resources in a CSI-ResourceSetId

trs CSI-ResourceSetId

},

qcl-Type ENUMERATED {typeA, typeB, typeC, typeD}

} OPTIONAL

}

TCI-RS-SetId ::= INTEGER (0..ffsValue)

-- Parameters for configuration of downlink PTRS (see 38.211 section 7.4.1.2.2)

DownlinkPTRS-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Presence and frequency density of DL PT-RS as a function of Scheduled BW

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-PTRS-frequency-density-table' (see 38.214, section 5.1)

-- FFS: To be Configured per BWP according to RAN1

frequencyDensity ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- Presence and time density of DL PT-RS as a function of MCS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-PTRS-time-density-table' (see 38.214, section 5.1)

-- FFS: To be Configured per BWP according to RAN1.

timeDensity ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- Indicates the number of DL PTRS ports. This is equal or smaller than the number of DMRS groups (related to PDSCH parameters

-- dmrs-group1 and dmrs-group2). Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-PTRS-ports' (see 38.214, section 5.1)

nrofPorts ENUMERATED {n1, n2},

-- EPRE ratio between PTRS and PDSCH. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-PTRS-EPRE-ratio' (see 38.214, section 5.1)

-- FFS: Whether there is one EPRE value per port (a comment in the L1 parameters hints that)

epre-Ratio FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Indicates the subcarrier offset for DL PTRS. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-PTRS-RE-offset' (see 38.214, section 5.1)

resourceElementOffset FFS\_Value OPTIONAL

}

RateMatchPattern ::= SEQUENCE {

rateMatchPatternId RateMatchPatternId,

patternType CHOICE {

bitmaps SEQUENCE {

-- A resource block level bitmap in the frequency domain. It indicates the PRBs to which the symbolsInResourceBlock bitmap applies.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'rate-match-PDSCH-bitmap1' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_ASN1: Consider multiple options with different number of bits (for narrower carriers)

resourceBlocks BIT STRING (SIZE (275)),

-- A symbol level bitmap in time domain. It indicates (FFS: with a bit set to true) the symbols which the UE shall rate match around.

-- This pattern recurs (in time domain) with the configured periodicityAndOffset.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'rate-match-PDSCH-bitmap2' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS: Why not split it into two BIT STRINGs of 14 bit each?

symbolsInResourceBlock CHOICE {

oneSlot BIT STRING (SIZE (14)),

twoSlots BIT STRING (SIZE (28))

},

-- A time domain repetition pattern. It determines the periodicity (FFS: And offset???) at which the symbolsInResourceBlock

-- pattern recurs. Absence of this field indicates the value n1, i.e., the symbolsInResourceBlock recurs every 14 symbols.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'rate-match-PDSCH-bitmap3' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS: Doesn’t one require also an offset to configure from where the repetitions start?

periodicityAndOffset CHOICE {

n5 INTEGER (0..4),

n10 INTEGER (0..9),

n20 INTEGER (0..19),

n40 INTEGER (0..39)

} OPTIONAL -- Need S

},

-- This ControlResourceSet us used as a PDSCH rate matching pattern, i.e., PDSCH reception rate matches around it.

controlResourceSet ControlResourceSetId

}

}

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'resource-set-index' (see 38.214, section 5.1.2.2.3)

RateMatchPatternId ::= INTEGER (0..maxRateMatchPatternId)

-- A Zero-Power (ZP) CSI-RS resource configuration. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ZP-CSI-RS-ResourceConfig' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

ZP-CSI-RS-Resource ::= SEQUENCE {

-- ZP CSI-RS resource configuration ID

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ZP-CSI-RS-ResourceConfigId' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

zp-CSI-RS-ResourceId ZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId,

-- OFDM symbol and subcarrier occupancy of the ZP-CSI-RS resource within a slot

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ZP-CSI-RS-ResourceMapping' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

resourceMapping SEQUENCE {

-- Frequency domain allocation within a physical resource block in accordance with 38.211, table 7.4.1.5.2-1. FFS: Table correct?

-- The number of bits that may be set to one depend on the chosen row in that table.

frequencyDomainAllocation CHOICE {

row1 BIT STRING (SIZE (4)),

row2 BIT STRING (SIZE (12)),

row4 BIT STRING (SIZE (3)),

other BIT STRING (SIZE (6))

},

-- Time domain allocation within a physical resource block. The field indicates the first OFDM symbol in the PRB used for CSI-RS.

firstOFDM-SymbolInTimeDomain INTEGER (0..13)

} OPTIONAL,

-- Periodicity and slot offset for periodic/semi-persistent ZP-CSI-RS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ZP-CSI-RS-timeConfig' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

periodicityAndOffset CHOICE {

sl5 INTEGER (0..4),

sl10 INTEGER (0..9),

sl20 INTEGER (0..19),

sl40 INTEGER (0..39),

sl80 INTEGER (0..79),

sl160 INTEGER (0..159),

sl320 INTEGER (0..319),

sl640 INTEGER (0..639)

} OPTIONAL,

-- Includes parameters to enbale configuration of frequency-occupancy of ZP-CSI)RS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ZP-CSI-RS-FreqBand' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

freqBand SEQUENCE {

-- PRB where this NZP-CSI-RS-Resource starts in relation to PRB 0 of the associated BWP. Only multiples of 4 are allowed (0, 4, ...)

startingRB INTEGER (0..maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks-1),

-- Number of PRBs across which this NZP-CSI-RS-Resource spans. Only multiples of 4 are allowed. The smallest configurable

-- number is the minimum of 24 and the width of the associated BWP.

nrofRBs INTEGER (24..maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks)

} OPTIONAL,

-- Density of ZP-CSI-RS resource measured in RE/port/PRB.

-- Values 0.5 (dot5), 1 (one) and 3 (three) are allowed for X=1,

-- values 0.5 (dot5) and 1 (one) are allowed for X=2, 16, 24 and 32,

-- value 1 (one) is allowed for X=4, 8, 12.

-- For density = 1/2, includes 1 bit indication for RB level comb offset indicating whether odd or even RBs are occupied by CSI-RS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ZP-CSI-RS-Density' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

density CHOICE {

dot5 ENUMERATED {evenPRBs, oddPRBs},

one NULL,

three NULL,

spare NULL

} OPTIONAL,

-- Time domain behavior of ZP-CSI-RS resource configuration.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ZP-CSI-RS-ResourceConfigType' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

resourceType ENUMERATED {aperiodic, periodic} OPTIONAL,

-- QCL type for source RS ==> target RS association. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'QCL-Type' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

qcl-Type ENUMERATED {typeA, typeB, typeC, typeD} OPTIONAL

}

ZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofZP-CSI-RS-Resources-1)

-- TAG-PDSCH-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *PhysCellId*

The *PhysCellId* indentifies the physical cell identity (PCI).

*PhysCellId* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-PHYS-CELL-ID-START

PhysCellId ::= INTEGER (0..1007)

-- TAG-PHYS-CELL-ID-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *PRB-Id*

The *PRB-Id* indentifies a Physical Resource Block (PRB) position within a carrier.

*PRB-Id* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-PRB-ID-START

PRB-Id ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks-1)

-- TAG-PRB-ID-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *PUCCH-Config*

The *PUCCH-Config* IE is used to configure the UE specific PUCCH parameters.

*PUCCH-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-PUCCH-CONFIG-START

PUCCH-ConfigCommon ::= SEQUENCE {

-- PUCCH resource configuration for HARQ-ACK before RRC connection setup

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-resource-common' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- FFS\_Value: RAN1 to provide more details on the value range

pucch-ResourceCommon BIT STRING (SIZE (4)) OPTIONAL,

-- Enables hopping of base sequence of PUCCH Format 0 when transmitted in different slots.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F0-Base-sequence-hopping' (see 38.211, section 6.4.1.3)

pucch-Format0BaseSequenceHopping ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL,

-- Enabling hopping of base sequence of PUCCH Format 1 when transmitted in different slots

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F1-Base-sequence-hopping' (see 38.211, section 6.4.1.3)

pucch-Format1BaseSequenceHopping ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL,

-- Cell-Specific scrambling ID for Group hoppping and sequence hopping if enabled.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ScramblingID' (see 38.211, section 6.4.1.3)

sequenceHoppingId BIT STRING (SIZE (10)) OPTIONAL,

-- Power control parameter P0 for PUCCH transmissions. Value in dBm. Only even values (step size 2) allowed.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0-nominal-pucch' (see 38.213, section 7.2)

p0-nominal INTEGER (-202..24) OPTIONAL,

-- deltaF for PUCCH format 0 (see 38.213, section 7.2)

deltaF-PUCCH-f0 FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- deltaF for PUCCH format 1 (see 38.213, section 7.2)

deltaF-PUCCH-f1 FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- deltaF for PUCCH format 2 (see 38.213, section 7.2)

deltaF-PUCCH-f2 FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- deltaF for PUCCH format 3 (see 38.213, section 7.2)

deltaF-PUCCH-f3 FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- deltaF for PUCCH format 4 (see 38.213, section 7.2)

deltaF-PUCCH-f4 FFS\_Value OPTIONAL

}

PUCCH-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

-- PUCCH resource sets (see 38.213 9.2)

resourceSets SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofPUCCH-ResourceSets)) OF PUCCH-ResourceSet OPTIONAL,

format1 SetupRelease { SEQUENCE {

-- Enabling inter-slot frequency hopping when PUCCH Format 1 is repetead over multiple slots.

interslotFrequencyHopping ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- Number of slots with the same PUCCH F1. When the field is absent the UE applies the value n1.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F1-number-of-slots' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- FFS\_Value: Undefined values y1-y3 in range!

nrofSlots ENUMERATED {n1,ny1,y2,y3} OPTIONAL -- Need S

} } OPTIONAL, -- Need M

format2 SetupRelease { SEQUENCE {

-- Maximum coding rate to determine how to feedback UCI on PUCCH Format 2.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F2-maximum-coderate' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

maxCodeRate ENUMERATED {zeroDot08, zeroDot15, zeroDot25, zeroDot35, zeroDot45, zeroDot60, zeroDot80} OPTIONAL,

-- Enabling simultaneous transmission of CSI and HARQ-ACK feedback with or without SR with PUCCH Format2

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F2-Simultaneous-HARQ-ACK-CSI' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value OFF

simultaneousHARQ-ACK-CSI ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL -- Need S

} } OPTIONAL, -- Need M

format3 SetupRelease { SEQUENCE {

-- Enabling inter-slot frequency hopping when PUCCH Format 3 is repetead over multiple slots.

interslotFrequencyHopping ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- Enabling 2 DMRS symbols per hop of a PUCCH Format 3 if both hops are more than X symbols when FH is enabled (X=4).

-- Enabling 4 DMRS sybmols for a PUCCH Format 3 with more than 2X+1 symbols when FH is disabled (X=4).

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F3-F4-additional-DMRS' (see 38.21X, section FFS\_Section)

additionalDMRS ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Max coding rate to determine how to feedback UCI on PUCCH Format 3

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F3-maximum-coderate' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

maxCodeRate ENUMERATED {zeroDot08, zeroDot15, zeroDot25, zeroDot35, zeroDot45, zeroDot60, zeroDot80} OPTIONAL,

-- Number of slots with the same PUCCH F3. When the field is absent the UE applies the value n1.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F3-number-of-slots' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- FFS\_Value: Undefined values y1-y3 in range!

nrofSlots ENUMERATED {n1,y1,y2,y3} OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Enabling pi/2 BPSK for UCI symbols instead of QPSK for PUCCH.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-PF3-PF4-pi/2PBSK' (see 38.21X, section FFS\_Section)

pi2PBSK ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- Enabling simultaneous transmission of CSI and HARQ-ACK feedback with or without SR with PUCCH Format3

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F3-Simultaneous-HARQ-ACK-CSI' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value OFF

simultaneousHARQ-ACK-CSI ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL -- Need S

} } OPTIONAL, -- Need M

format4 SetupRelease { SEQUENCE {

-- Enabling inter-slot frequency hopping when PUCCH Format 4 is repetead over multiple slots.

interslotFrequencyHopping ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- Enabling 2 DMRS symbols per hop of a PUCCH Format 4 if both hops are more than X symbols when FH is enabled (X=4).

-- Enabling 4 DMRS sybmols for a PUCCH Format 4 with more than 2X+1 symbols when FH is disabled (X=4).

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F3-F4-additional-DMRS' (see 38.21X, section FFS\_Section)

additionalDMRS ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Max coding rate to determine how to feedback UCI on PUCCH Format 4

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F4-maximum-coderate' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

maxCodeRate ENUMERATED {zeroDot08, zeroDot15, zeroDot25, zeroDot35, zeroDot45, zeroDot60, zeroDot80} OPTIONAL,

-- Number of slots with the same PUCCH F4. When the field is absent the UE applies the value n1.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F4-number-of-slots' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- FFS\_Value: Undefined values y1-y3 in range!

nrofSlots ENUMERATED {n1,y1,y2,y3} OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Enabling pi/2 BPSK for UCI symbols instead of QPSK for PUCCH.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-PF3-PF4-pi/2PBSK' (see 38.21X, section FFS\_Section)

pi2PBSK ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- Enabling simultaneous transmission of CSI and HARQ-ACK feedback with or without SR with PUCCH Format4

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F4-Simultaneous-HARQ-ACK-CSI' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value OFF

simultaneousHARQ-ACK-CSI ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL -- Need S

} } OPTIONAL, -- Need M

schedulingRequestResources SetupRelease {

SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSchedulingRequestResources)) OF SchedulingRequestResourceConfig

} OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Scambling ID for PUCCH. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ScramblingID' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_DefaultValue: At other occasions the default value is supposed to be the UE ID. Not for SRS?

scramblingID ScramblingId OPTIONAL,

-- Configuration of the spatial relation between a reference RS and PUCCH. Reference RS can be SSB/CSI-RS/SRS.

-- If the list has more than one element, MAC-CE selects a single element.

-- FFS: How does the MAC CE refer to these spatialRelationInfo entries... any why?

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-SpatialRelationInfo' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

spatialRelationInfo SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSpatialRelationInfos)) OF CHOICE {

ssb-Index SSB-Index,

csi-RS NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId,

srs SRS-ResourceId

} OPTIONAL,

pucch-PowerControl PUCCH-PowerControl OPTIONAL

}

-- A set with one or more PUCCH resources

PUCCH-ResourceSet ::= SEQUENCE {

pucch-ResourceSetId PUCCH-ResourceSetId,

-- Between 4 and 8 PUCCH resources. PUCCH resources of format0 and format1 are only allowed in the first PUCCH reosurce set,

-- i.e., in a PUCCH-ResourceSet with pucch-ResourceSetId = 0. PUCCH resources of format2, format3 and format4 are only allowed

-- in a PUCCH-ReosurceSet with pucch-ResourceSetId > 0.

-- The UE chooses a PUCCH-Resource from this list based on the 2-bit ARI field in DCI as speciied in 38.213, FFS\_section.

-- FFS\_ASN1: Consider converting to a AddMod/Release List

resources SEQUENCE (SIZE (4..maxNrofPUCCH-ResourcesPerSet)) OF PUCCH-Resource,

-- Maximum number of payload bits minus 1 that the UE may transmit using this PUCCH resource set. In a PUCCH occurrence, the UE

-- chooses the first of its PUCCH-ResourceSet which supports the number of bits that the UE wants to transmit.

-- The field is not present in the first set (Set0) since the maximum Size of Set0 is specified to be 3 bit.

-- The field is not present in the last configured set since the UE derives its maximum payload size as specified in 38.213.

-- This field can take integer values that are multiples of 4. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'N\_2' or 'N\_3' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

maxPayloadMinus1 INTEGER (4..256)

}

PUCCH-ResourceSetId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofPUCCH-ResourceSets-1)

PUCCH-Resource ::= SEQUENCE {

pucch-ResourceId PUCCH-ResourceId,

startingPRB PRB-Id,

startingSymbolIndex INTEGER(0..13),

nrofSymbols ENUMERATED {n1, n2},

-- Index of starting PRB for second hop of PUCCH in case of FH. This value is appliable for intra-slot frequency hopping.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-2nd-hop-PRB' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

secondHopPRB PRB-Id OPTIONAL,

-- Selection of the PUCCH format and format-specific parameters

format CHOICE {

format0 PUCCH-format0, -- Cond InFirstSetOnly

format1 PUCCH-format1, -- Cond InFirstSetOnly

format2 PUCCH-format2, -- Cond NotInFirstSet

format3 PUCCH-format3, -- Cond NotInFirstSet

format4 PUCCH-format4 -- Cond NotInFirstSet

}

}

PUCCH-ResourceId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofPUCCH-ResourcesPerSet-1)

-- A PUCCH Format 0 resource configuration (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F0-resource-config' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

PUCCH-format0 ::= SEQUENCE {

intraSlotFrequencyHopping BOOLEAN,

initialCyclicShift INTEGER(0..11)

}

-- A PUCCH Format 1 resource configuration (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F1-resource-config' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

PUCCH-format1 ::= SEQUENCE {

intraSlotFrequencyHopping BOOLEAN,

initialCyclicShift INTEGER(0..11),

timeDomainOCC INTEGER(0..6)

}

-- A PUCCH Format 2 resource configuration (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F2-resource-config' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

PUCCH-format2 ::= SEQUENCE {

nrofPRBs INTEGER (1..16),

intraSlotFrequencyHopping BOOLEAN

}

-- A PUCCH Format 3 resource configuration(see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F3-resource-config' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

PUCCH-format3 ::= SEQUENCE {

nrofPRBs INTEGER (1..16),

intraSlotFrequencyHopping BOOLEAN

}

-- A PUCCH Format 4 resource configuration (see 38.213, section 9.2)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUCCH-F4-resource-config' (see 38.213, section 9.2)

PUCCH-format4 ::= SEQUENCE {

intraSlotFrequencyHopping BOOLEAN,

occ-Length ENUMERATED {n2,n4},

occ-Index ENUMERATED {n0,n1,n2,n3}

}

PUCCH-PowerControl ::= SEQUENCE {

-- RNTI used for PUCCH TPC. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TPC-PUCCH-RNTI' (see 38.213, section 10).

-- FFS: RAN1 models different RNTIs (on PDCCH) as different Search Spaces. Do the same here? Group e.g. with monitoring periodicity

-- and other PDCCH parameters (if any)

tpc-PUCCH-RNTI RNTI-Value OPTIONAL,

-- A set with dedicated P0 values for PUCCH, i.e., {P01, P02,... }. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0-pucch-set' (see 38.213, section 7.2)

p0-Set SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofPUCCH-P0-PerSet)) OF P0-PUCCH OPTIONAL,

-- A set of Reference Signals (e.g. a CSI-RS config or a SSblock) to be used for PUCCH pathloss estimation.

-- Up to maxNrofPUCCH-PathlossReference-RSs may be configured

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is it possible not to configure it at all? What does the UE use then? Any SSB?

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'pucch-pathlossReference-rs-config' (see 38.213, section 7.2)

pathlossReferenceRSs SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofPUCCH-PathlossReferenceRSs)) OF PUCCH-PathlossReferenceRS OPTIONAL,

-- Number of PUCCH power control adjustment states maintained by the UE (i.e., g(i)). If the field is present (n2) the UE maintains

-- two power control states (i.e., g(i,0) and g(i,1)). Otherwise, it applies one (i.e., g(i,0)).

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'num-pucch-pcadjustment-states' (see 38.213, section 7.2)

twoPUCCHtwoPUCCH-PC-AdjustmentStates ENUMERATED {twoStates} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

...

}

-- P0 value for PUCCH. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0-pucch' (see 3,213, section 7.2)

P0-PUCCH ::= FFS\_Value

-- A reference signal (RS) configured as pathloss reference signal for PUCCH power control

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'pucch-pathlossReference-rs' (see 38.213, section 7.2)

PUCCH-PathlossReferenceRS ::= SEQUENCE {

pucch-PathlossReferenceRS-Id PUCCH-PathlossReferenceRS-Id,

referenceSignal CHOICE {

ssb-Index SSB-Index,

csi-rs-Index NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId

}

}

-- ID for a referemce signal (RS) configured as PUCCH pathloss reference

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'pucch-pathlossreference-index' (see 38.213, section 7.2)

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is this ID used anywhere except inside the PUCCH-PathlossReferenceRS itself? If not, remove.

PUCCH-PathlossReferenceRS-Id ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofPUCCH-PathlossReferenceRS-1)

-- TAG-PUCCH-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *PUSCH-Config*

The IE *PUSCH-Config* IE is used to configure the UE specific PUSCH parameters. The IE *PUSCH-ConfigCommon* IE is used to configure the cell specific PUSCH parameters.

*PUSCH-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-PUSCH-CONFIG-START

PUSCH-ConfigCommon ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Sequence-group hopping can be enabled or disabled by means of this cell-specific parameter.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Group-hopping-enabled-Transform-precoding' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

-- This field is Cell specific

groupHoppingEnabledTransformPrecoding ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- ------------------------

-- Power control parameters

-- Power offset between msg3 and RACH preamble transmission. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Delta-preamble-msg3' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

msg3-DeltaPreamble FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- P0 value for PUSCH with grant (except msg3). Value in dBm. Only even values (step size 2) allowed.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0-nominal-pusch-withgrant' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

-- This field is cell specific

p0-NominalWithGrant INTEGER (-202..24) OPTIONAL,

...

}

PUSCH-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Indicates whether to use code-block-group (CBG) based transmission (see 38.214, section x.x.x.x) FFS\_Ref

-- FFS: Is this BOOLEAN parameter needed or can it be derived from the presence of the codeBlockGroupsPerTransportBlock?

codeBlockGroupTransmission ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Maximum number of code-block-groups (CBGs) per TB (see 38.xxx, section x.x.x, FFS\_Ref)

maxCodeBlockGroupsPerTransportBlock ENUMERATED {n2, n4, n6, n8},

dmrs-Uplink SEQUENCE {

-- Selection of the DMRS type to be used for UL (see section 38.211, section 6.4.1.1.2)

dmrs-Type ENUMERATED {type1, type2} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Position for additional DM-RS in DL, see Table 7.4.1.1.2-4 in 38.211.

-- The four values represent the cases of 1+0, 1+1, 1+1+1. 1+1+1+1 non-adjacent OFDM symbols for DL.

dmrs-AdditionalPosition ENUMERATED {pos0, pos1, pos2, pos3} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- Configures uplink PTRS (see 38.211, section x.x.x.x) FFS\_Ref

phaseTrackingRS SetupRelease { UplinkPTRS-Config } OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- The maximum number of OFDM symbols for UL front loaded DMRS.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-DMRS-max-len' (see 38.214, section 6.4.1.1.2)

maxLength ENUMERATED {len1, len2} OPTIONAL,

-- FFS: If CP-OFDM and DFT-S-OFDM cannot be configured simultaneously, make the two blocks below a CHOICE

-- DMRS related parameters for Cyclic Prefix OFDM

cp-OFDM SEQUENCE {

-- UL DMRS scrambling initalization for CP-OFDM

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-DMRS-Scrambling-ID' (see 38.214, section 6.4.1.1.2)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value Physical cell ID + 6 fixed bits (e.g. 000000)

-- FFS: Clarify default value: Are the 6 bits zeros (says e.g.). Are they the MSBs or LSBs?

-- FFS: Is this parameter also needed for cell specific signallign

scramblingID BIT STRING (SIZE (16)) OPTIONAL -- Need S

},

-- DMRS related parameters for DFT-s-OFDM (Transform Precoding)

dft-S-OFDM SEQUENCE {

-- Parameter: N\_ID^(csh\_DMRS) for DFT-s-OFDM DMRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'nDMRS-CSH-Identity-Transform-precoding' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS: Should we reaplace this explicit type by the type ScramblingId?

nDMRS-CSH-Identity INTEGER(0..1007) OPTIONAL,

-- Parameter: N\_ID^(PUSCH) for DFT-s-OFDM DMRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'nPUSCH-Identity-Transform precoding' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS: Should we reaplace this explicit type by the type ScramblingId?

nPUSCH-Identity INTEGER(0..1007) OPTIONAL,

-- Sequence-group hopping for PUSCH can be disabled for a certain UE despite being enabled on a cell basis. For DFT-s-OFDM DMRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Disable-sequence-group-hopping-Transform-precoding' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

disableSequenceGroupHopping ENUMERATED {disabled} OPTIONAL,

-- Determines if sequence hopping is enabled or not. For DFT-s-OFDM DMRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Sequence-hopping-enabled-Transform-precoding' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

sequenceHoppingEnabled ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- Orthogonal Cover Code (OCC) for DFT-s-OFDM DMRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Activate-DMRS-with OCC-Transform-precoding' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

activateDMRS-WithOCC ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- CS for the ZC sequence. For DFT-s-OFDM DMRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CyclicShift-Transform-precoding' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

cyclicShift INTEGER (0..7) OPTIONAL,

-- Parameter: Delta\_ss for sequence shift pattern. For DFT-s-OFDM DMRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'groupAssignmentPUSCH-Transform-precoding' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 'CellID mod 30'

-- FFS: Is the CellID meant to be the PCI? Or the entire CellID?

groupAssignmentPUSCH INTEGER (0..29) OPTIONAL -- Need S

}

},

pusch-PowerControl PUSCH-PowerControl OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Configured one of two supported frequency hopping mode. If not configured frequency hopping is not configured

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Frequency-hopping-PUSCH' (see 38.214, section 6)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value Not configured

frequencyHopping ENUMERATED {mode1, mode2},

-- Configure either LBRM or FBRM for PUSCH. FBRM = Full buffer rate-matchingLBRM = Limited buffer rate-matching

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'LBRM-FBRM-selection' (see 38.212, section 5.4.2)

rateMatching ENUMERATED {fullBufferRM, limitedBufferRM},

-- Configuration of resource allocation type 0 and resource allocation type 1 for non-fallback DCI

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Resouce-allocation-config' (see 38.214, section 6.1.2)

-- FFS\_Value: Are these values just 3 flags (ENUMERATED) or the actual configurations? If the latter, where are they defined?

resourceAllocation CHOICE {

resourceAllocationType0 NULL,

resourceAllocationType1 NULL,

dynamicSwitch NULL

} OPTIONAL,

-- Indicates which MCS table the UE shall use for PUSCH without transform precoder

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'MCS-Table-PUSCH' (see 38.214, section 6.1.4)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 64QAM

mcs-Table ENUMERATED {qam64, qam256},

-- Indicates which MCS table the UE shall use for PUSCH with transform precoding

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'MCS-Table-PUSCH-transform-precoding' (see 38.214, section 6.1.4)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 64QAM

mcs-TableTransformPrecoder ENUMERATED {qam64, qam256},

-- The UE specific selection of transformer precoder for PUSCH. When the field is absent the UE applies the value msg3-tp.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUSCH-tp' (see 38.211, section 6.3.1.4)

transformPrecoder ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- Selection between config 1 and config 2 for RBG size for PUSCH. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'RBG-size-PUSCH' (see 38.214, section 6.1.2.2.1)

rbg-Size ENUMERATED {config1, config2},

-- Selection between and configuration of dynamic and semi-static beta-offset

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UCI-on-PUSCH' (see 38.213, section 9.3)

uci-OnPUSCH SetupRelease { CHOICE {

dynamic SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..4)) OF BetaOffsets,

semiStatic BetaOffsets

} } OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Accounts for overhead from CSI-RS, CORESET, etc. FFS: Clarify value range and description.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Xoh-PDSCH' (see 38.214, section 5.1.3.2)

xOverhead FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Set of frequency hopping offsets used when frequency hopping is enabled for granted transmission (not msg3) and type 2

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Frequency-hopping-offsets-set' (see 38.214, section 6.3)

frequencyHoppingOffsets SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..4)) OF FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

...

}

-- Configuration of Uplink Phase-Tracking-Reference-Signals (PTRS)

-- FFS: Is it possible to configure PTRS for CP-OFDM and DFT-S OFDM simultaneously or just one. If the latter, replace below by a CHOICE.

-- FFS: Some but not all of these parameters are supposed to be per BWP. Can we anyway just move all of them into BWP?

UplinkPTRS-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

-- The PTRS port index for each configured SRS resource/resource set for non-codebook based UL MIMO, with at most UL-PTRS-ports port indices

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-PTRS-SRS-mapping-non-CB' (see 38.214, section 6.1)

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is this only for CP-OFDM or also for DFT-S-OFDM

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is it correct that the port index can only be 1 or 2? And if so, is the value further restricted by the parameter nrofPorts?

-- And if so, should this structure be conditional to the nrofPorts being set to n2?

srs-MappingNonCodebook SEQUENCE {

srs CHOICE {

resource SRS-ResourceId,

resourceSet SRS-ResourceSetId

},

ptrs-PortIndex ENUMERATED {n1, n2} OPTIONAL,

-- Configuration of UL PTRS for CP-OFDM

cp-OFDM SetupRelease { SEQUENCE {

-- Presence and frequency density of UL PT-RS for CP-OFDM waveform as a function of scheduled BW

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-PTRS-frequency-density-table' (see 38.214, section 6.1)

-- FFS: Configuration is supposed to be per BWP according to RAN1

frequencyDensity ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- Presence and time density of UL PT-RS for CP-OFDM waveform as a function of MCS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-PTRS-time-density-table' (see 38.214, section 6.1)

-- FFS: Configuration is supposed to be per BWP according to RAN1

timeDensity ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- Indicator related to the number of UL PTRS ports for CP-OFDM. Details to be further decided.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-PTRS-ports' (see 38.214, section 6.1)

nrofPorts ENUMERATED {n1, n2},

-- Indicates the subcarrier offset for UL PTRS for CP-OFDM. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-PTRS-RE-offset' (see 38.214, section 6.1)

resourceElementOffset FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- UL PTRS power boosting factor per PTRS port. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-PTRS-power' (see 38.214, section 6.1)

ptrs-Power ENUMERATED {f1, f2, f3, f4}

}

} OPTIONAL, -- Cond M

-- Configuration of UL PTRS for DFT-S-OFDM.

dft-S-OFDM SetupRelease { SEQUENCE {

-- Sample density of PT-RS for DFT-s-OFDM, pre-DFT, indicating a set of thresholds T={NRBn,n=0,1,2,3,4},

-- that indicates dependency between presence of PT-RS and scheduled BW and the values of X and K the UE should

-- use depending on the scheduled BW according to the table in 38.214 FFS\_Section.

-- FFS: Configuration is supposed to be per BWP according to RAN1

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-PTRS-pre-DFT-density' (see 38.214, section 6.1)

sampleDensity FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Time density (OFDM symbol level) of PT-RS for DFT-s-OFDM

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-PTRS-time-density-transform-precoding' (see 38.214, section 6.1)

timeDensity ENUMERATED {d1, d2} OPTIONAL

} }

} OPTIONAL -- Cond M

}

-- A set of beta-offset values

BetaOffsets ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Up to 2 bits HARQ-ACK. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'betaOffset-ACK-Index-1' (see 38.213, section 9.3)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 11

betaOffsetACK-Index1 INTEGER(0..31) OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Up to 11 bits HARQ-ACK. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'betaOffset-ACK-Index-2' (see 38.213, section 9.3)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 11

betaOffsetACK-Index2 INTEGER(0..31) OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Above 11 bits HARQ-ACK. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'betaOffset-ACK-Index-3' (see 38.213, section 9.3)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 11

betaOffsetACK-Index3 INTEGER(0..31) OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Up to 11 bits of CSI part 1 bits. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'betaOffset-CSI-part-1-Index-1' (see 38.213, section 9.3)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 13

betaOffsetCSI-Part1-Index1 INTEGER(0..31) OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Above 11 bits of CSI part 1 bits. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'betaOffset-CSI-part-1-Index-2' (see 38.213, section 9.3)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 13

betaOffsetCSI-Part1-Index2 INTEGER(0..31) OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Up to 11 bits of CSI part 2 bits. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'betaOffset-CSI-part-2-Index-1' (see 38.213, section 9.3)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 13

betaOffsetCSI-Part2-Index1 INTEGER(0..31) OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Above 11 bits of CSI part 2 bits. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'betaOffset-CSI-part-2-Index-2' (see 38.213, section 9.3)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 13

betaOffsetCSI-Part2-Index2 INTEGER(0..31) OPTIONAL -- Need S

}

PUSCH-PowerControl ::= SEQUENCE {

-- RNTI used for PUSCH TPC. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TPC-PUSCH-RNTI' (see 38.213, section 10)

-- FFS: RAN1 models different RNTIs (on PDCCH) as different Search Spaces. Do the same here? Group e.g. with monitoring periodicity

-- and other PDCCH parameters (if any)

tpc-PUSCH-RNTI RNTI-Value OPTIONAL,

-- If enabled, UE applies TPC commands via accumulation. If not enabled, UE applies the TPC command without accumulation

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Accumulation-enabled' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

tpc-Accumulation ENUMERATED { enabled } OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Dedicated alpha value for msg3 PUSCH. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'alpha-ue-pusch-msg3' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 1.

msg3-Alpha Alpha OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- P0 value for UL grant-free/SPS based PUSCH. Value in dBm. Only even values (step size 2) allowed.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0-nominal-pusch-withoutgrant' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

p0-NominalWithoutGrant INTEGER (-202..24) OPTIONAL,

-- configuration {p0-pusch,alpha} sets for PUSCH (except msg3), i.e., { {p0,alpha,index1}, {p0,alpha,index2},…}.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0-push-alpha-setconfig' (see 38,213, section 7.1)

p0-AlphaSets SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofP0-PUSCH-AlphaSets)) OF P0-PUSCH-AlphaSet OPTIONAL,

-- A set of Reference Signals (e.g. a CSI-RS config or a SSblock) to be used for PUSCH path loss estimation.

-- Up to maxNrofPUSCH-PathlossReferenceRSs may be configured when 'PUSCH beam indication' is present (FFS: in DCI???).

-- Otherwise, there may be only one entry. FFS\_CHECK: Is it possible not to configure it at all? What does the UE use then? Any SSB?

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'pusch-pathlossReference-rs-config' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

pathlossReferenceRSs SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofPUSCH-PathlossReferenceRSs)) OF PUSCH-PathlossReferenceRS OPTIONAL,

-- Number of PUSCH power control adjustment states maintained by the UE (i.e., fc(i)). If the field is present (n2) the UE maintains

-- two power control states (i.e., fc(i,1) and fc(i,2)). Otherwise, it applies one (i.e., fc(i,1)).

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'num-pusch-pcadjustment-states' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

twoPUSCH-PC-AdjustmentStates ENUMERATED {twoStates} OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Indicates whether to apply dela MCS. When the field is absent, the UE applies Ks = 0 in delta\_TFC formula for PUSCH.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'deltaMCS-Enabled' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

deltaMCS ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL -- Need S

}

-- A set of p0-pusch and alpha used for PUSCH with grant. 'PUSCH beam indication' (if present) gives the index of the set to

-- be used for a particular PUSCH transmission.

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is the ”PUSCH beam indication” in DCI which schedules the PUSCH? If so, clarify in field description

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0-pusch-alpha-set' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

P0-PUSCH-AlphaSet ::= SEQUENCE {

p0-PUSCH-AlphaSetId P0-PUSCH-AlphaSetId,

-- P0 value for PUSCH with grant (except msg3). Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0-pusch' (see 38,213, section 7.1)

p0 FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- alpha value for PUSCH with grant (except msg3) (see 38.213, section 7.1)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 1

alpha Alpha OPTIONAL -- Need S

}

-- ID for a P0-PUSCH-AlphaSet. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0alphasetindex' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

P0-PUSCH-AlphaSetId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofP0-PUSCH-AlphaSets-1)

-- A reference signal (RS) configured as pathloss reference signal for PUSCH power control

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'pusch-pathlossReference-rs' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

PUSCH-PathlossReferenceRS ::= SEQUENCE {

pusch-PathlossReferenceRS-Id PUSCH-PathlossReferenceRS-Id,

referenceSignal CHOICE {

ssb-Index SSB-Index,

csi-rs-Index NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId

}

}

-- ID for a referemce signal (RS) configured as PUSCH pathloss reference

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'pathlossreference-index' (see 38.213, section 7.1)

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is this ID used anywhere except inside the PUSCH-PathlossReference-RS itself?

PUSCH-PathlossReferenceRS-Id ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofPUSCH-PathlossReferenceRS-1)

-- TAG-PUSCH-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### *– Q-OffsetRange*

The IE *Q-OffsetRange* is used to indicate a cell, beam or frequency specific offset to be applied when evaluating candidates for cell re-selection or when evaluating triggering conditions for measurement reporting. The value in dB. Value dB-24 corresponds to -24 dB, dB-22 corresponds to -22 dB and so on.

*Q-OffsetRange* information element

-- ASN1START

Q-OffsetRange ::= ENUMERATED {

dB-24, dB-22, dB-20, dB-18, dB-16, dB-14,

dB-12, dB-10, dB-8, dB-6, dB-5, dB-4, dB-3,

dB-2, dB-1, dB0, dB1, dB2, dB3, dB4, dB5,

dB6, dB8, dB10, dB12, dB14, dB16, dB18,

dB20, dB22, dB24}

-- ASN1STOP

Editor’s Note: FFS Confirm the exact values that are supported.

#### – *QuantityConfig*

The IE *QuantityConfig* specifies the measurement quantities and layer 3 filtering coefficients for NR and inter-RAT measurements.

QuantityConfig information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-QUANTITY-CONFIG-START

QuantityConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

quantityConfigNR QuantityConfigNR OPTIONAL, -- Need M

quantityConfigNR-List QuantityConfigNR-List OPTIONAL -- Need M

}

QuantityConfigNR-List::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofQuantityConfigmaxNrofQuantityConfig)) OF QuantityConfigNR

QuantityConfigNR::= SEQUENCE {

quantityConfigCell QuantityConfigRS,

quantityConfigRS-IIndex QuantityConfigRS OPTIONAL -- Need M

}

QuantityConfigRS ::= SEQUENCE {

-- SS Block based

ssb-FilterCoefficientRSRP FilterCoefficient DEFAULT ffsTypeAndValue,

ssb-FilterCoefficientRSRQ FilterCoefficient DEFAULT ffsTypeAndValue,

ssb-FilterCoefficientRS-SINR FilterCoefficient DEFAULT ffsTypeAndValue,

-- CSI-RS based

csi-rs-FilterCoefficientRSRP FilterCoefficient DEFAULT ffsTypeAndValue,

csi-rs-FilterCoefficientRSRQ FilterCoefficient DEFAULT ffsTypeAndValue,

csi-rs-FilterCoefficientRS-SINR FilterCoefficient DEFAULT ffsTypeAndValue

}

-- TAG-QUANTITY-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| QuantityConfig field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***quantityConfigCell***  Specifies L3 filter configurations for cell measurement results for the configurable RS Types (e.g. SS/PBCH block and CSI-RS) and the configurable measurement quantities (e.g. RSRP, RSRQ and SINR). |
| ***quantityConfigNR***  Specifies filter configurations for NR measurements. |
| ***quantityConfigRSindex***  Specifies L3 filter configurations for measurement results per RS index for the configurable RS Types (e.g. SS/PBCH block and CSI-RS) and the configurable measurement quantities (e.g. RSRP, RSRQ and SINR). |
| ***ssb-FilterCoefficientRSRP***  Specifies L3 filter configurations for SS-RSRP measurement results from the L1 filter(s), as defined in 38.215 [9]. |
| ***ssb-FilterCoefficientRSRQ***  Specifies L3 filter configurations for SS-RSRQ measurement results from the L1 filter(s), as defined in 38.215 [9]. |
| ***ssb-FilterCoefficientSINR***  Specifies L3 filter configurations for SS-SINR measurement results from the L1 filter(s), as defined in 38.215 [9]. |
| ***csi-rs-FilterCoefficientRSRP***  Specifies L3 filter configurations for CSI-RSRP measurement results from the L1 filter(s), as defined in 38.215 [9]. |
| ***csi-rs-FilterCoefficientRSRQ***  Specifies L3 filter configurations for CSI-RSRQ measurement results from the L1 filter(s), as defined in 38.215 [9]. |
| ***csi-rs-FilterCoefficientRSRP***  Specifies L3 filter configurations for CSI-SINR measurement results from the L1 filter(s), as defined in 38.215 [9]. |

#### – *RACH-ConfigCommon*

The *RACH-ConfigCommon* IE is used to specify the cell specific random-access parameters.

*RACH-ConfigCommon* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-RACH-CONFIG-COMMON-START

RACH-ConfigCommon ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: whether any of the parameter(s) in the L1 TP should be within CBRA-SSB-ResourceList

groupBconfigured SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: ra-Msg3SizeGroupA values

ra-Msg3SizeGroupA ENUMERATED {b56, b144, b208, b256, b282, b480, b640, b800, b1000, spare7, spare6, spare5,

spare4, spare3, spare2, spare1},

-- FFS: Need and definition of messagePowerOffsetGroupB

messagePowerOffsetGroupB ENUMERATED { minusinfinity, dB0, dB5, dB8, dB10, dB12, dB15, dB18}

} OPTIONAL,

cbra-SSB-ResourceList CBRA-SSB-ResourceList,

ra-ContentionResolutionTimer ENUMERATED { sf8, sf16, sf24, sf32, sf40, sf48, sf56, sf64},

-- Msg1 (RA preamble):

-- UE may select the SS block and corresponding PRACH resource for path-loss estimation and (re)transmission

-- based on SS blocks that satisfy the threshold (see 38.213, section REF)

ssb-Threshold RSRP-Range OPTIONAL,

-- FFS: Provide proper description

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SUL-RSRP-Threshold' (see FFS\_Spec, section FFS\_Section)

sul-RSRP-Threshold RSRP-Range OPTIONAL,

-- PRACH configuration index. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PRACHConfigurationIndex' (see 38.211, section 6.3.3.2)

prach-ConfigurationIndex INTEGER (0..255) OPTIONAL,

-- PRACH root sequence index. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PRACHRootSequenceIndex' (see 38.211, section 6.3.3.1).

-- The value range depends on whether L=839 or L=139

prach-RootSequenceIndex CHOICE {

l839 INTEGER (0..837),

l139 INTEGER (0..137)

} OPTIONAL,

-- N-CS configuration, see Table 6.3.3.1-3 in 38.211

zeroCorrelationZoneConfig INTEGER(0..15),

-- Subcarrier spacing of PRACH. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'prach-Msg1SubcarrierSpacing' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_DefaultValue: Same as DL SCS?

msg1-SubcarrierSpacing SubcarrierSpacing OPTIONAL,

-- The number of PRACH transmission occasions FDMed in one time instance.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'prach-FDM' (see 38,211, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_DefaultValue?

msg1-FDM BIT STRING (SIZE (2)),

-- Offset of lowest PRACH transmission occasion in frequency domain with respective to PRB 0 of initial active UL BWP(s)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'prach-frequency-start' (see 38,211, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_FIXME: Clarify whether it is ”initial” or ”firstActive” UL BWP, i.e., whether this is meant for SpCell and/or SCell

-- FFS\_FIXME: What is PRB 0 or a BWP? PRB 0 defines the lower edge of the carrier.

msg1-FrequencyStart INTEGER (0..maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks-1) OPTIONAL,

-- Configuration of restricted sets, see 38.211 6.3.3.1

-- FFS\_CHECK: RAN1 value said "restrictedTypeA". Does it mean "restrictedToTypeA"? If not, what else?

restrictedSetConfig ENUMERATED {unrestricted, restrictedToTypeA, restrictedToTypeB},

-- (see 38.213, section 7.4)

preambleReceivedTargetPower ENUMERATED {

dBm-120, dBm-118, dBm-116, dBm-114, dBm-112, dBm-110, dBm-108, dBm-106, dBm-104, dBm-102, dBm-100,

dBm-98, dBm-96, dBm-94,dBm-92, dBm-90, dBm-88, dBm-86, dBm-84,dBm-82, dBm-80, dBm-78, dBm-76,

dBm-74, dBm-72, dBm-70, dBm-68, dBm-66, dBm-64, dBm-62, dBm-60, dBm-58, dBm-56, dBm-54, dBm-52, dBm-50, dBm-48, dBm-46, dBm-44, dBm-42, dBm-40, dBm-38, dBm-36, dBm-34, dBm-32, dBm-30, dBm-28, dBm-26, dBm-24, dBm-22, dBm-20, dBm-18, dBm-16, dBm-14, dBm-12, dBm-10, dBm-8, dBm-6, dBm-4, dBm-2, dBm-0, dBm2, dBm4, dBm6 } OPTIONAL,

-- Power ramping steps for PRACH (see 38.321, FFS\_section)

powerRampingStep ENUMERATED {dB0, dB2, dB4, dB6} OPTIONAL, -- Need R

-- FFS\_CHECK: PreambleTransMax parameter usage (parameter was not provided by RAN1 and not yet discussed in RAN2)

preambleTransMax ENUMERATED {n3, n4, n5, n6, n7, n8, n10, n20, n50, n100, n200},

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'CB-preambles-per-SSB' (see 38.211?, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_CHECK: Relation to (old) RAN2 CBRA-SSB-ResourceList handling the CB-RA preambles/resources per beam.

-- FFS\_Value: RAN1 indicated ”4 bit” but there should be actual values here... and not hidden in a table.

cb-preamblesPerSSB FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Number of SSBs per RACH occasion. By multiplying with cb-preamblesPerSSB, the UE determines the total number of CB preambles.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SSB-per-rach-occasion' (see 38.211?, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_CHECK: Relation to (old) RAN2 CBRA-SSB-ResourceList handling the CB-RA preambles/resources per beam.

-- FFS\_Value: RAN1 indicated ”3 bit” but there should be actual values here... and not hidden in a table.

ssb-perRACH-Occasion FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Msg2 (RAR) window length. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'msg2-scs' (see 38.213, section 8.1)

-- FFS\_Value: To be decided by RAN2

ra-ResponseWindow ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- CORESET configured for random access. When the field is absent the UE uses the CORESET according to pdcch-ConfigSIB1

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'rach-coreset-configuration' (see 38.211?, section FFS\_Section)

ra-ControlResourceSet ControlResourceSetId OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Search space for random access procedure. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ra-SearchSpace' (see 38.214?, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS: If the field is absent the UE uses the SearchSpace according to pdcchConfigSIB1

ra-SearchSpace SearchSpace OPTIONAL,

-- Subcarrier spacing for Msg3. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'msg3-scs' (see 38.213, section 8.1)

msg3-SubcarrierSpacing SubcarrierSpacing,

-- Indicates to a UE whether transform precoding is enabled for Msg3 transmission.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'msg3-tp' (see 38.213, section 8.1)

msg3-transformPrecoding ENUMERATED {true} OPTIONAL -- Need R

}

CBRA-SSB-ResourceList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxRA-SSB-Resources)) OF CBRA-SSB-Resource

CBRA-SSB-Resource ::= SEQUENCE {

ssb SSB-Id,

startIndexRA-PreambleGroupA PreambleStartIndex,

numberofRA-PreamblesGroupA NumberOfRA-Preambles,

numberOfRA-Preambles NumberOfRA-Preambles,

-- PRACH configuration for SSB configuration (i.e. time and frequency location)

-- FFS / TODO: Type Definition for RA-Resources.

ra-Resources RA-Resources

}

PreambleStartIndex ::= INTEGER (0..maxRA-PreambleIndex)

NumberofRA-Preambles ::= INTEGER (1.. maxNrOfRA-PreamblesPerSSB)

-- TAG-RACH-CONFIG-COMMON-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *RACH-ConfigDedicated*

The IE *RACH-ConfigDedicated* is used to specify the dedicated random access parameters.

*RACH-ConfigDedicated* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-RACH-CONFIG-DEDICATED-START

-- FFS: resources for msg1-based on-demand SI request

-- FFS: resources for beam failure recovery request

RACH-ConfigDedicated ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Resources for handover to the cell

cfra-Resources CFRA-Resources,

-- Subcarrier spacing for msg2 for contention-free RA procedure for handover

rar-SubcarrierSpacing SubcarrierSpacing

}

-- FFS\_CHECK: Isn’t it sufficient to have just one list and the CHOICE inside the list element (around the ssb/csirs)?

CFRA-Resources ::= CHOICE {

cfra-ssb-ResourceList SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxRA-SSB-Resources)) OF CFRA-SSB-Resource,

cfra-csirs-ResourceList SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxRA-CSIRS-Resources)) OF CFRA-CSIRS-Resource,

cfra-csirs-Threshold RSRP-Range

}

CFRA-SSB-Resource ::= SEQUENCE {

ssb SSB-Id,

ra-PreambleIndex INTEGER (0..63),

-- PRACH configuration for SSB configuration (i.e. time and frequency location)

ra-Resources RA-Resources -- Definition FFS

}

CFRA-CSIRS-Resource ::= SEQUENCE {

csirs NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId, -- FFS where the CSI-RS are defined (e.g. MO)

ra-PreambleIndex INTEGER (0..63),

-- PRACH configuration for CSIRS configuration (i.e. time and frequency location)

ra-Resources RA-Resources -- Definition FFS

}

-- TAG-RACH-CONFIG-DEDICATED-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *RadioBearerConfig*

The IE *RadioBearerConfig* is used to add, modify and release signalling- and/or data radio bearers. Specifically, this IE carries the parameters for PDCP and, if applicable, SDAP entities for the radio bearers.

*RadioBearerConfig* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-RADIO-BEARER-CONFIG-START

RadioBearerConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

srb-ToAddModList SRB-ToAddModList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

srb-ToReleaseList INTEGER (3) OPTIONAL, -- Need M

drb-ToAddModList DRB-ToAddModList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

drb-ToReleaseList DRB-ToReleaseList OPTIONAL, -- Need M

securityConfig SecurityConfig OPTIONAL, -- Cond KeyChange

...

}

SRB-ToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..2)) OF SRB-ToAddMod

SRB-ToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

srb-Identity SRB-Identity,

-- may only be set if the cell groups of all linked logical channels are reset or released

reestablishPDCP ENUMERATED{true} OPTIONAL, -- Cond KeyChange

pdcp-Config PDCP-Config OPTIONAL, -- Cond PDCP

...

}

DRB-ToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxDRB)) OF DRB-ToAddMod

DRB-ToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

cnAssociation CHOICE {

-- The EPS bearer ID determines the EPS bearer when NR connects to EPC using EN-DC

eps-BearerIdentity INTEGER (0..15), -- EPS-DRB-Setup

-- The SDAP configuration determines how to map QoS flows to DRBs when NR connects to the 5GC

sdap-Config SDAP-Config -- NGC

},

drb-Identity DRB-Identity,

-- may only be set if the cell groups of all linked logical channels are reset or released

reestablishPDCP ENUMERATED{true} OPTIONAL, -- Cond KeyChangeKeyChange

recoverPDCP ENUMERATED{true} OPTIONAL, -- Need N

pdcp-Config PDCP-Config OPTIONAL, -- Cond PDCP

...

}

DRB-ToReleaseList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxDRB)) OF DRB-Identity

SecurityConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

securityAlgorithmConfig SecurityAlgorithmConfig OPTIONAL, -- Need M

keyToUse ENUMERATED{KeNB, S-KgNB} OPTIONAL, -- Need M

...

}

-- TAG-RADIO-BEARER-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

|  |
| --- |
| *RadioBearerConfig* field descriptions |
| ***drb-Identity***  In case of DC, the DRB identity is unique within the scope of the UE, i.e. an MCG DRB cannot use the same value as a split DRB. For a split DRB the same identity is used for the MCG- and SCG parts of the configuration. |
| ***cnAssociation***  Indicates if the bearer is associated with the eps-bearerIdentity (when connected to EPC) or sdap-Config (when connected to 5GC). |
| ***keyToUse***  Indicates if the bearer configured with this list is using KeNB or S-KgNB for deriving ciphering and/or integrity protection keys. Network should not configure SRB1 and SRB2 with S-KgNB and SRB3 with KgNB. |
| ***srb-Identity***  Value 1 is applicable for SRB1 only.  Value 2 is applicable for SRB2 only.  Value 3 is applicable for SRB3 only. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Conditional Presence | Explanation |
| *KeyChange* | The field is mandatory present in case of with key change, otherwise the field is not present |
| *PDCP* | The field is mandatory present if the corresponding RB is being setup or reconfigured with NR PDCP; otherwise the field is optionally present, need M |

#### – *ReportConfigId*

The IE *ReportConfigId* is used to identify a measurement reporting configuration.

*ReportConfigId* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-REPORT-CONFIG-ID-START

ReportConfigId ::= INTEGER (1..maxReportConfigId)

-- TAG-REPORT-CONFIG-ID-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *ReportConfigNR*

The IE *ReportConfigNR* specifies criteria for triggering of an NR measurement reporting event. Measurement reporting events are based on cell measurement results, which can either be derived based on SS/PBCH block or CSI-RS. These events are labelled AN with N equal to 1, 2 and so on.

Event A1: Serving becomes better than absolute threshold;

Event A2: Serving becomes worse than absolute threshold;

Event A3: Neighbour becomes amount of offset better than PCell/PSCell;

Event A4: Neighbour becomes better than absolute threshold;

Event A5: PCell/PSCell becomes worse than absolute threshold1 AND Neighbour becomes better than another absolute threshold2.

Event A6: Neighbour becomes amount of offset better than SCell.

*ReportConfigNR* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-REPORT-CONFIG-START

ReportConfigNR ::= SEQUENCE {

reportType CHOICE {

periodical PeriodicalReportConfig,

eventTriggered EventTriggerConfig,

reportCGI ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

...

}

}

-- FFS / TODO: Consider separating trgger configuration (trigger, periodic, …) from report configuration.

-- Current structure allows easier definiton of new events and new report types e.g. CGI, etc.

EventTriggerConfig::= SEQUENCE {

eventId CHOICE {

eventA1 SEQUENCE {

a1-Threshold MeasTriggerQuantity,

reportOnLeave BOOLEAN,

hysteresis Hysteresis,

timeToTrigger TimeToTrigger

},

eventA2 SEQUENCE {

a2-Threshold MeasTriggerQuantity,

reportOnLeave BOOLEAN,

hysteresis Hysteresis,

timeToTrigger TimeToTrigger

},

eventA3 SEQUENCE {

a3-Offset MeasTriggerQuantityOffset,

reportOnLeave BOOLEAN,

hysteresis Hysteresis,

timeToTrigger TimeToTrigger,

useWhiteCellList BOOLEAN

},

eventA4 SEQUENCE {

a4-Threshold MeasTriggerQuantity,

reportOnLeave BOOLEAN,

hysteresis Hysteresis,

timeToTrigger TimeToTrigger,

useWhiteCellList BOOLEAN

},

eventA5 SEQUENCE {

a5-Threshold1 MeasTriggerQuantity,

a5-Threshold2 MeasTriggerQuantity,

reportOnLeave BOOLEAN,

hysteresis Hysteresis,

timeToTrigger TimeToTrigger,

useWhiteCellList BOOLEAN

},

eventA6 SEQUENCE {

a6-Offset MeasTriggerQuantityOffset,

reportOnLeave BOOLEAN,

hysteresis Hysteresis,

timeToTrigger TimeToTrigger,

useWhiteCellList BOOLEAN

}

},

rsType ENUMERATED {ssb, csi-rs},

-- Common reporting config (at least to periodical and eventTriggered)

reportInterval ReportInterval,

reportAmount ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- Cell reporting configuration

reportQuantityCell MeasReportQuantity,

maxReportCells INTEGER (1..maxCellReport),

-- RS index reporting configuration

reportQuantityRsIndexes MeasReportQuantity OPTIONAL, -- Need M

maxNrofRSIndexesToReportmaxNrofRSIndexesToReport INTEGER (1..maxNrofIndexesToReport) OPTIONAL, -- Need M

onlyReportBeamIds BOOLEAN,

-- If configured the UE includes the best neighbour cells per serving frequency

reportAddNeighMeas ENUMERATED {setup} OPTIONAL – Need R

}

PeriodicalReportConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

rsType ENUMERATED {ss, csi-rs},

-- Common reporting config (at least to periodical and eventTriggered)

reportInterval ReportInterval,

reportAmount ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- Cell reporting configuration

reportQuantityCell MeasReportQuantity,

maxReportCells INTEGER (1..maxCellReport),

-- RS index reporting configuration

reportQuantityRsIndexes MeasReportQuantity OPTIONAL, -- Need R

maxNrofRsIndexesToReport INTEGER (1..maxNrofIndexesToReport) OPTIONAL, -- Need R

onlyReportBeamIds BOOLEAN

}

MeasTriggerQuantity ::= CHOICE {

rsrp RSRP-Range,

rsrq RSRQ-Range,

sinr SINR-Range

}

MeasTriggerQuantityOffset ::= CHOICE {

rsrp INTEGER (ffsValue),

rsrq INTEGER (ffsValue),

sinr INTEGER (ffsValue)

}

MeasReportQuantity ::= SEQUENCE {

rsrp BOOLEAN,

rsrq BOOLEAN,

sinr BOOLEAN

}

-- TAG-REPORT-CONFIG-START

-- ASN1STOP

| *ReportConfigNR* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***a3-Offset/a6-Offset***  Offset value(s) to be used in NR measurement report triggering condition for event a3/a6. |
| ***aN-ThresholdM***  Threshold value associated to the selected trigger quantity (e.g. RSRP, RSRQ, SINR) per RS Type (e.g. SS/PBCH block, CSI-RS) to be used in NR measurement report triggering condition for event number aN. If multiple thresholds are defined for event number aN, the thresholds are differentiated by M. The network configures aN-Threshold1 only for events A1, A2, A4, A5 and a5-Threshold2 only for event A5. |
| ***eventId***  Choice of NR event triggered reporting criteria. |
| ***maxReportCells***  Max number of non-serving cells to include in the measurement report. |
| ***maxNrofRsIndexesToReport***  Max number of measurement information per RS index to include in the measurement report for A1-A6 events. |
| ***reportAmount***  *Number* of measurement reports applicable for *eventTriggered* as well as for *periodical* report types |
| ***reportOnLeave***  Indicates whether or not the UE shall initiate the measurement reporting procedure when the leaving condition is met for a cell in cellsTriggeredList, as specified in 5.5.4.1. |
| ***reportQuantityCell***  The cell measurement quantities to be included in the measurement report. |
| ***reportQuantityRsIndexes***  Indicates which measurement information per RS index the UE shall include in the measurement report. |
| ***reportAddNeighMeas***  Indicates that the UE shall includes the best neighbour cells per serving frequency. |
| ***timeToTrigger***  Time during which specific criteria for the event needs to be met in order to trigger a measurement report. |
| ***useWhiteCellList***  Indicates whether only the cells included in the white-list of the associated measObject are applicable as specified in 5.5.4.1. |

Editor’s Note: FFS ASN.1 details of *reportCGI*.

#### – *ReportConfigToAddModList*

The IE *ReportConfigToAddModList* concerns a list of reporting configurations to add or modify.

ReportConfigToAddModList information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-REPORT-CONFIG-TO-ADD-MOD-LIST-START

ReportConfigToAddModList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofReportConfigIdmaxNrofReportConfigId)) OF ReportConfigToAddMod

ReportConfigToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

reportConfigId ReportConfigId,

reportConfig CHOICE {

reportConfigNR ReportConfigNR,

reportConfigEUTRA ReportConfigEUTRA

}

}

-- TAG- REPORT-CONFIG-TO-ADD-MOD-LIST-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

Editor’s Note: FFS Definition of *reportConfigEUTRA* in 38.331.

#### – *RLC-Config*

The IE *RLC-Config* is used to specify the RLC configuration of SRBs and DRBs.

*RLC-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-RLC-CONFIG-START

RLC-Config ::= CHOICE {

am SEQUENCE {

ul-AM-RLC UL-AM-RLC,

dl-AM-RLC DL-AM-RLC

},

um-Bi-Directional SEQUENCE {

ul-UM-RLC UL-UM-RLC,

dl-UM-RLC DL-UM-RLC

},

um-Uni-Directional-UL SEQUENCE {

ul-UM-RLC UL-UM-RLC

},

um-Uni-Directional-DL SEQUENCE {

dl-UM-RLC DL-UM-RLC

},

...

}

UL-AM-RLC ::= SEQUENCE {

sn-FieldLength SN-FieldLengthAM,

t-PollRetransmit T-PollRetransmit,

pollPDU PollPDU,

pollByte PollByte,

maxRetxThreshold ENUMERATED { t1, t2, t3, t4, t6, t8, t16, t32 }

}

DL-AM-RLC ::= SEQUENCE {

sn-FieldLength SN-FieldLengthAM,

t-Reassembly T-Reassembly,

t-StatusProhibit T-StatusProhibit

}

UL-UM-RLC ::= SEQUENCE {

sn-FieldLength SN-FieldLengthUM

}

DL-UM-RLC ::= SEQUENCE {

sn-FieldLength SN-FieldLengthUM,

t-Reassembly T-Reassembly

}

T-PollRetransmit ::= ENUMERATED {

ms5, ms10, ms15, ms20, ms25, ms30, ms35,

ms40, ms45, ms50, ms55, ms60, ms65, ms70,

ms75, ms80, ms85, ms90, ms95, ms100, ms105,

ms110, ms115, ms120, ms125, ms130, ms135,

ms140, ms145, ms150, ms155, ms160, ms165,

ms170, ms175, ms180, ms185, ms190, ms195,

ms200, ms205, ms210, ms215, ms220, ms225,

ms230, ms235, ms240, ms245, ms250, ms300,

ms350, ms400, ms450, ms500, ms800, ms1000,

ms2000, ms4000, spare5, spare4, spare3,

spare2, spare1}

PollPDU ::= ENUMERATED {

p4, p8, p16, p32, p64, p128, p256, p512, p1024, p2048, p4096, p6144, p8192, p12288, p16384, p20480,

p24576, p28672, p32768, p40960, p49152, p57344, p65536, infinity, spare8, spare7, spare6, spare5, spare4,

spare3, spare2, spare1}

PollByte ::= ENUMERATED {

kB1, kB2, kB5, kB8, kB10, kB15, kB25, kB50, kB75,

kB100, kB125, kB250, kB375, kB500, kB750, kB1000,

kB1250, kB1500, kB2000, kB3000, kB4000, kB4500,

kB5000, kB5500, kB6000, kB6500, kB7000, kB7500,

mB8, mB9, mB10, mB11, mB12, mB13, mB14, mB15,

mB16, mB17, mB18, mB20, mB25, mB30, mB40, infinity,

spare20, spare19, spare18, spare17, spare16,

spare15, spare14, spare13, spare12, spare11,

spare10, spare9, spare8, spare7, spare6, spare5,

spare4, spare3, spare2, spare1}

T-Reassembly ::= ENUMERATED {

ms0, ms5, ms10, ms15, ms20, ms25, ms30, ms35,

ms40, ms45, ms50, ms55, ms60, ms65, ms70,

ms75, ms80, ms85, ms90, ms95, ms100, ms110,

ms120, ms130, ms140, ms150, ms160, ms170,

ms180, ms190, ms200, spare1}

T-StatusProhibit ::= ENUMERATED {

ms0, ms5, ms10, ms15, ms20, ms25, ms30, ms35,

ms40, ms45, ms50, ms55, ms60, ms65, ms70,

ms75, ms80, ms85, ms90, ms95, ms100, ms105,

ms110, ms115, ms120, ms125, ms130, ms135,

ms140, ms145, ms150, ms155, ms160, ms165,

ms170, ms175, ms180, ms185, ms190, ms195,

ms200, ms205, ms210, ms215, ms220, ms225,

ms230, ms235, ms240, ms245, ms250, ms300,

ms350, ms400, ms450, ms500, ms800, ms1000,

ms1200, ms1600, ms2000, ms2400, spare2, spare1}

SN-FieldLengthUM ::= ENUMERATED {size6, size12}

SN-FieldLengthAM ::= ENUMERATED {size12, size18}

-- TAG-RLC-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| *RLC-Config*field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***maxRetxThreshold***  Parameter for RLC AM in TS 38.322 [4]. Value t1 corresponds to 1 retransmission, t2 to 2 retransmissions and so on. |
| ***pollByte***  Parameter for RLC AM in TS 38.322 [4]. Value kB25 corresponds to 25 kBytes, kB50 to 50 kBytes and so on. kBInfinity corresponds to an infinite amount of kBytes. |
| ***pollPDU***  Parameter for RLC AM in TS 38.322 [4]. Value p4 corresponds to 4 PDUs, p8 to 8 PDUs and so on. pInfinity corresponds to an infinite number of PDUs. |
| ***sn-FieldLength***  Indicates the RLC SN field size, see TS 38.322 [4], in bits. Value size6 means 6 bits, size12 means 12 bits, size18 means 18 bits. |
| ***t-PollRetransmit***  Timer for RLC AM inTS 38.322 [4], in milliseconds. Value ms5 means 5ms, ms10 means 10ms and so on. |
| ***t-Reassembly***  Timer for reassembly in TS 38.322 [4], in milliseconds. Value ms0 means 0ms, ms5 means 5ms and so on. If is FFS whether ms1600 is supported in this version of the specification. |
| ***t-StatusProhibit***  Timer for status reporting in TS 38.322 [4], in milliseconds. Value ms0 means 0ms, ms5 means 5ms and so on. |

#### – *RLF-TimersAndConstants*

Editor’s Note: FFS / TODO: Insert the RLF timers and related functionality. Check what is needed for EN-DC.

The *RLF-TimersAndConstants* IE is used to configure UE specific timers and constants.

*RLF-TimersAndConstants* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-RLF-TIMERS-AND-CONSTANTS-START

RLF-TimersAndConstants ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS / TODO: Add RRC parameters such as timers and constants.

}

-- TAG-RLF-TIMERS-AND-CONSTANTS-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *RNTI-Value*

The *RNTI-Value* IE represents a Radio Network Temporary Identity.

*RNTI-Value* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-RNTI-VALUE-START

RNTI-Value ::= BIT STRING (SIZE (16))

-- TAG-RNTI-VALUE-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *SCellIndex*

The IE *SCellIndex* concerns a short identity, used to identify an SCell.

*SCellIndex* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SCELL-INDEX-START

-- FFS: Value range and usage across Cell Groups (shared value range or separate value range). RAN1 indicated 16 serving cells per CG.

SCellIndex ::= INTEGER (1..31)

-- TAG-SCELLINDEX-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *SchedulingRequest-Config*

The IE *SchedulingRequest-Config* is used to configure the parameters, for the dedicated scheduling request (SR) resources.

*SchedulingRequest-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SCHEDULING-REQUEST-CONFIG-START

SchedulingRequestConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

schedulingRequestToAddModList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSR-ConfigPerCellGroup)) OF SchedulingRequestToAddMod OPTIONAL, -- Need N

schedulingRequestToReleaseList SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSR-ConfigPerCellGroup)) OF SchedulingRequestId OPTIONAL -- Need N

}

SchedulingRequestToAddMod ::= SEQUENCE {

schedulingRequestID SchedulingRequestId,

sr-prohibitTimer ENUMERATED {ms1, ms2, ms4, ms8, ms16, ms32, ms64, ms128},

sr-TransMax ENUMERATED { n4, n8, n16, n32, n64, spare3, spare2, spare1}

}

-- FFS\_TODO: provide resources for each SchedulingRequestID in ServingCellConfigDedicated (TBD whether directly, in PUCCH-Config, in each BWP)

-- TAG-SCHEDULING-REQUEST-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| *SchedulingRequest-Config*field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***schedRequestToAddModList***  List of Scheduling Request configurations to add or modify. |
| ***SchedulingRequestId***  Used to modify a SR configuration and to indicate, in LogicalChannelConfig, the SR configuration to which a logical channel is mapped. |
| ***sr-prohibitTimer***  Timer for SR transmission on PUCCH in TS 38.321 [3]. Value in ms. ms1 corresponds to 1ms, ms2 corresponds to 2ms, and so on. |
| ***sr-TransMax***  Maximum number of SR transmissions as described in 38.321 [3]. n4 corresponds to 4, n8 corresponds to 8, and so on. |

#### – *SchedulingRequestResourceConfig*

The IE *SchedulingRequestResourceConfig* determines physical layer resources on PUCCH where the UE may send the dedicated scheduling request (D-SR) (see 38.213, section 9.2.2).

SchedulingRequestResourceConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

-- SR periodicity. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SR-periodicity' and 'SR-offset' (see 38.213, section 9.2.2)

-- FFS\_Value: Check whether value ranges are implemented correctly for higher SCSs.

periodicityAndOffset CHOICE {

-- FFS\_RAN1: Need to signal an offset or is it known from PUCCH format configuration?

sym2 NULL,

-- FFS\_RAN1: Need to signal an offset or is it known from PUCCH format configuration?

sym7 NULL,

sl1 NULL, -- Recurs in every slot

sl2 INTEGER (0..1),

sl5 INTEGER (0..4),

sl10 INTEGER (0..9),

sl20 INTEGER (0..19),

sl40 INTEGER (0..39),

sl80 INTEGER (0..79),

sl160 INTEGER (0..159), -- Only for 30, 60 and 120 Khz Subcarrier Spacing

sl320 INTEGER (0..319), -- Only for 60 and 120 Khz Subcarrier Spacing

sl640 INTEGER (0..639) -- Only for 120 Khz Subcarrier Spacing

} OPTIONAL,

-- Format, length, ... of this SR reosurce. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SR-resource' (see 38.213, section 9.2.2)

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is the implementation as intended by RAN1? Or were these supposed to be just IDs pointing to a resource configured elsewhere?

resource CHOICE {

format0 PUCCH-format0,

format1 PUCCH-format1

} OPTIONAL

}

#### – *ScramblingId*

The IE *ScramblingID* is used for scrambling channels and reference signals.

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SCRAMBLING-ID-START

-- FFS: Replace by type PhysCellId?

ScramblingId ::= BIT STRING (SIZE (10))

-- TAG-SCRAMBLING-ID-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *SDAP-Config*

The IE *SDAP-Config* is used to set the configurable SDAP parameters for a data radio bearer. All configured instances of SDAP-Config with the same value of pdu-Session correspond to the same SDAP entity as specified in TS 37.324 [FFS\_Ref].

*SDAP-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SDAP-CONFIG-START

SDAP-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS / TODO: Definition of PDU-SessionID to be added

pdu-Session PDU-SessionID,

-- FFS: separate configuration for UL and DL

sdap-HeaderDL ENUMERATED {present, absent},

sdap-HeaderUL ENUMERATED {present, absent},

defaultDRB BOOLEAN,

reflectiveQoS BOOLEAN, -- It is FFS whether this field is needed

-- FFS: Is the simple list sufficient? Replace by add/mod/release list? Or bitmap?

mappedQoS-Flows SEQUENCE (SIZE (0..maxNrofQFIs)) OF QFI OPTIONAL, -- Need N

...

}

QFI ::= INTEGER (0..maxQFI)

-- TAG-SDAP-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| *SDAP-Config*field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***defaultDRB***  Indicates whether or not this is the default DRB for this PDU session. Among all configured instances of *SDAP-Config* with the same value of *pdu-Session*, this field shall be set to TRUE in one instance of SDAP-Config and to FALSE in all other instances. |
| ***mappedQoS-FFlows***  List of QFIs of QoS flows of the PDU session indicated by pdu-Session which are configured to be mapped to this DRB. A QFI value can be included at most once in all configured instances of *SDAP-Config* with the same value of *pdu-Session*. |
| ***pdu-Session***  Identity of the PDU session whose QoS flows are mapped to the DRB |
| ***reflectiveQoS***  Indicates whether or not reflective QoS is active for QoS flows transmitted via this DRB. |
| ***sdap-HeaderUL***  Indicates whether or not a SDAP header is present for UL data on this DRB. |
| ***sdap-HeaderDL***  Indicates whether or not a SDAP header is present for DL data on this DRB. |

#### – *SecurityAlgorithmConfig*

The IE *SecurityAlgorithmConfig* is used to configure AS integrity protection algorithm (SRBs) and AS ciphering algorithm (SRBs and DRBs).

*SecurityAlgorithmConfig* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SECURITY-ALGORITHM-CONFIG-START

SecurityAlgorithmConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

cipheringAlgorithm CipheringAlgorithm,

integrityProtAlgorithm IntegrityProtAlgorithm

}

IntegrityProtAlgorithm ::= ENUMERATED {

nia0, nia1, nia2, nia3, spare4, spare3,

spare2, spare1, ...}

CipheringAlgorithm ::= ENUMERATED {

nea0, nea1, nea2, nea3, spare4, spare3,

spare2, spare1, ...}

-- TAG-SECURITY-ALGORITHM-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

| *SecurityAlgorithmConfig* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***cipheringAlgorithm***  Indicates the ciphering algorithm to be used for SRBs and DRBs, as specified in TS 33.501 [11]. The algorithms nea0-nea3 are identical to the LTE algorithms eea0-3. For EN-DC, the algorithms configured for bearers using KeNB shall be the same as for all bearers using KeNB. |
| ***integrityProtAlgorithm***  For EN-DC, this IE indicates the integrity protection algorithm to be used for SRBs, as specified in TS 33.501 [11]. The algorithms nia0-nia3 is identical to the LTE algorithms eia0-3. For EN-DC, the algorithms configured for SRBs using KeNB shall be the same as for all SRBs using KeNB. |

#### – *ServCellIndex*

The IE *ServCellIndex* concerns a short identity, used to identify a serving cell (i.e. the PCell or an SCell). Value 0 applies for the PCell, while the *SCellIndex* that has previously been assigned applies for SCells.

*ServCellIndex* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SERV-CELL-INDEX-START

ServCellIndex ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofServingCells-1)

-- TAG-SERV-CELL-INDEX-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *ServingCellConfigCommon*

The *ServingCellConfigCommon* IE is used to configure cell specific parameters of a UE’s serving cell. The IE contains parameters which a UE would typically acquire from SSB, MIB or SIBs when accessing the cell from IDLE. With this IE, the network provides this information in dedicated signalling when configuring a UE with a SCells or with an additional cell group (SCG). It also provides it for SpCells (MCG and SCG) upon reconfiguration with sync.

*ServingCellConfigCommon* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SERVING-CELL-CONFIG-COMMON-START

ServingCellConfigCommon ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Need to indicate initial BWP here?

-- FFS: Update the following based on input from RAN1 and RAN4

physCellId PhysCellId OPTIONAL, -- Cond HOAndSCellAdd,

frequencyInfoDL FrequencyInfoDL OPTIONAL, -- Cond InterFreqHOAndSCellAdd

-- The initial downlink BWP configuration for a SpCell (PCell of MCG or SCG).

initialDownlinkBWP DownlinkBWP OPTIONAL,

uplinkConfigCommon UplinkConfigCommon OPTIONAL, -- Cond InterFreqHOAndUplinkSCellAdd

supplementaryUplink SEQUENCE {

uplinkConfigCommon UplinkConfigCommon OPTIONAL

-- FFS: Add additional (selection) criteria determining when/whether the UE shall use the SUL frequency

} OPTIONAL, -- Cond SUL

-- Subcarrier spacing for SIB1, Msg.2/4 for initial access and SI-messages.

-- Values 15, and 30 kHz are applicable for carrier frequencies <6GHz; Values 60 and 120 kHz are applicable for carrier frequencies >6GHz

-- FFS: This must be one of the SCSs defined already inside FrequencyInfoDL. Consider flagging one of those as ”common” instead of this field.

subcarrierSpacingCommon SubcarrierSpacing,

-- Indicates the time domain positions of the transmitted SS-blocks in an SS-burst.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SSB-Transmitted' (see 38.213, section 4.1)

-- FFS\_CECHK: Is the NW required to provide always a valid bitmap? If not, we cannot use “need M”

ssb-PositionsInBurst CHOICE {

-- bitmap for sub 3 GHz

shortBitmap BIT STRING (SIZE (4)),

-- bitmap for 3-6 GHz

mediumBitmap BIT STRING (SIZE (8)),

-- bitmap for above 6 GHz

longBitmap BIT STRING (SIZE (64))

} OPTIONAL, -- Need M,

-- The SSB periodicity in msec for the rate matching purpose (see 38.211, section [7.4.3.1])

ssb-periodicityServingCell ENUMERATED { ms5, ms10, ms20, ms40, ms80, ms160 } OPTIONAL,

-- Position of (first) DL DM-RS (see 38.211, section 7.4.1.1.1)

dmrs-TypeA-Position ENUMERATED {pos2, pos3},

-- Subcarrier spacing of SSB. Used only for non-initial access (e.g. SCells, PCell of SCG).

-- If the field is absent the UE shall assume the default value of the band.

-- FFS in RAN1: Possibility to have several default values? May the field be absent in that case?

subcarrierSpacingSSB SubcarrierSpacingSSB OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- A cell-specific TDD UL/DL configuration.

tdd-UL-DL-ConfigurationCommon TDD-UL-DL-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL, -- Cond TDD

-- A second cell-specific TDD UL/DL configuration.

-- FFS\_CHECK: What does the UE do with two? Which one applies? A union of both? If so, how?

tdd-UL-DL-ConfigurationCommon2 TDD-UL-DL-ConfigCommon OPTIONAL, -- Cond TDD

-- TX power that the NW used for SSB transmission. The UE uses it to estimate the RA preamble TX power.

-- (see 38.213, section 7.4)

ss-PBCH-BlockPower INTEGER (-60..50)

-- =====================================

-- FFS which of the following are needed

--

-- BWPConfig

-- ControlResourceSet

-- SearchSpace

-- or include pdcchConfigSIB1 instead of BWP, CORESET and SearchSpace?

-- bcch-Config BCCH-Config,

-- pcch-Config PCCH-Config,

-- pdsch-ConfigCommon PDSCH-ConfigCommon,

-- soundingRS-UL-ConfigCommon SoundingRS-UL-ConfigCommon,

}

UplinkConfigCommon ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Absolute uplink frequency configuration and subcarrier specific virtual carriers.

frequencyInfoUL FrequencyInfoUL OPTIONAL, -- Cond InterFreqHOAndUplinkSCellAdd

-- The initial uplink BWP configuration for a SpCell (PCell of MCG or SCG). Corresponds to L1 parameter 'initial-UL-BWP'.

-- (see 38.331, section FFS\_Section).

initialUplinkBWP UplinkBWP OPTIONAL -- Cond FDD-PCell

}

-- TAG-SERVING-CELL-CONFIG-COMMON-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *ServingCellConfigDedicated*

The *ServingCellConfigDedicated* IE is used to configure (add or modify) the UE with a serving cell, which may be the SpCell or an SCell of an MCG or SCG. The parameters herein are UE specific.

*ServingCellConfigDedicated* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SERVING-CELL-CONFIG-DEDICATED-START

ServingCellConfigDedicated ::= SEQUENCE {

-- L1 parameters:

tdd-UL-DL-ConfigurationDedicated TDD-UL-DL-DedicatedConfigDedicatedConfigDedicated OPTIONAL, -- Cond TDD

bwp-Config BWPConfig OPTIONAL,

-- Identifer used to initalite data scrambling (c\_init) for both PDSCH.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Data-scrambling-Identity' (see 38,214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS:\_Replace by tye ScramblingId used in other places?

dataScramblingIdentityPDSCH INTEGER (0..1007) OPTIONAL,

-- Identifer used to initalite data scrambling (c\_init) for both PUSCH.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Data-scrambling-Identity' (see 38,214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS: Replace by tye ScramblingId used in other places?

dataScramblingIdentityPUSCH INTEGER (0..1007) OPTIONAL,

-- FFS: Is the PDSCH-Config BWP-specific? If so, move into DownlinkBWP

pdsch-Config PDSCH-Config OPTIONAL,

-- FFS in RAN1: Tracking Reference Signals configuration: TRS-Config?

csi-MeasConfig CSI-MeasConfig OPTIONAL,

-- FFS: Is the PUSCH-Config BWP-specific? If so, move into UplinkBWP

pusch-Config PUSCH-Config OPTIONAL,

srs-Config SRS-Config OPTIONAL,

-- MAC parameters:

-- FFS: Is SPS-Config per BWP? If so, split it in UL and DL and move it to the respective UL- and DL BWP)

sps-Config SPS-Config OPTIONAL,

sCellDeactivationTimer ENUMERATED {

ms20, ms40, ms80, ms160, ms200, ms240, ms320, ms400, ms480, ms520, ms640, ms720, ms840, ms1280, spare2,

spare1} OPTIONAL, -- Cond ServingCellWithoutPUCCH

-- Indicates whether this SCell is cross-carrier scheduled by another serving cell.

-- FFS: How to indicate whether CIF is present in the DCIs of the PCell? Should the CrossCarrierSchedulingConfig be included

-- and set to own so that the field “cif-Presence” can be set?

crossCarrierSchedulingConfig CrossCarrierSchedulingConfig OPTIONAL, -- Cond SCell

-- Timing Advance Group ID, as specified in TS 38.321 [3], which this cell belongs to.

tag-Id TAG-Id,

-- Enables the "UE beam lock function (UBF)", which disable changes to the UE beamforming configuration when in NR\_RRC\_CONNECTED.

-- FFS: Parameter added preliminary based on RAN4 LS in R4-1711823. Decide where to place it (maybe ServingCellConfigCommon or

-- in a BeamManagement IE??)

ue-BeamLockFunction ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- Indicates whether UE shall apply as pathloss reference either the downlink of PCell or of SCell that corresponds with this uplink

-- (see 38.213, section 7)

pathlossReferenceLinking ENUMERATED {pCell, sCell} OPTIONAL -- Cond SCell

}

-- TAG-SERVING-CELL-CONFIG-DEDICATED-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *SRB-Identity*

The IE SRB-Identity is used to identify a Signalling Radio Bearer (SRB) used by a UE.

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SRB-IDENTITY-START

SRB-Identity ::= INTEGER (1..3)

-- TAG-SRB-IDENTITY-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *SPS-Config*

Editor’s Note: FFS: Relation between (UL-)SPS and “ULtransmissionWithoutGrant”. Is it one feature with different configurations as the L1 parameters suggest? How is it modelled in MAC? What about DL?

Editor’s Note: FFS: RAN1 indicated in the L1 table: “Note: Multiple configurations is possible, how many needs to be determined". RAN2 agreed that SPS can be used on Pcell and SCell... But each UE can use it on at most one serving cell of a cell group at a time. Are the ”multiple configuration” meant for one carrier? Does the UE then use several SPS-RNTIs?

The *SPS-Config* IE is used to configure semi-persistent transmission according to two possible schemes. The actual uplink grant may either be configured via RRC (type1) or provided via the PDCCH (addressed to SPS-RNTI) (type2).

*SPS-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SPS-CONFIG-START

-- SPS may be configured on the PCell as well as on SCells. But it shall not be configured for more than

-- one serving cell of a cell group at once.

SPS-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

downlink SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Discuss in RAN2 whether for UL and DL use same SPS-RNTI (like in LTE)? See also naming FFS above.

-- RNTI for DL SPS. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SPS C-RNTI' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS: RAN1 models different RNTIs (on PDCCH) as different Search Spaces. Do the same here? Group e.g. with monitoring periodicity

-- and other PDCCH parameters (if any)

sps-RNTI RNTI-Value OPTIONAL,

-- Periodicity for DL SPS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'semiPersistSchedIntervalDL' (see 38.214 and 38.321, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_Value: Support also shorter periodicities for DL?

periodicity ENUMERATED {ms10, ms20, ms32, ms40, ms64, ms80, ms128, ms160, ms320, ms640,

spare6, spare5, spare4, spare3, spare2, spare1} OPTIONAL,

-- Number of configured HARQ processes for SPS DL. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'numberOfConfSPS-Processes' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

nrofHARQ-Processes INTEGER (1..8) OPTIONAL,

-- HARQ resource for PUCCH for DL SPS. (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_Value: Is this supposed to be the actual configuration or just an ENUMERATED (configuration eslewhere)?

n1PUCCH-AN CHOICE {

format0 PUCCH-ResourceConfigPF0, -- FFS: Is this supposed to be PUCCH-format0?

format1 PUCCH-ResourceConfigPF1 -- FFS: Is this supposed to be PUCCH-format1?

} OPTIONAL

},

-- UL SPS configuration

-- FFS CHECK: Add possibility to release UL SPS

uplink SEQUENCE {

-- Closed control loop to apply. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'PUSCH-closed-loop-index' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

powerControlLoopToUse ENUMERATED {n0, n1},

-- Index of the P0-PUSCH-AlphaSet to be used for this configuration

p0-PUSCH-Alpha P0-PUSCH-AlphaSetId,

-- Enable transformer precoder for type1 and type2. Absence indicates that it is disabled.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-TWG-tp' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

transformPrecoder ENUMERATED {enabled} OPTIONAL,

-- The number of HARQ processes configured. It applies for both Type 1 and Type 2

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-TWG-numbHARQproc' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

nrofHARQ-processes INTEGER(1..ffsValue) OPTIONAL,

-- The number or repetitions of K:

repK ENUMERATED {n1, n2, n4, n8},

-- If repetitions is used, this field indicates the redundancy version (RV) sequence to use.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-TWG-RV-rep' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

repK-RV ENUMERATED {s1-0231, s2-0303, s3-0000} OPTIONAL,

-- Periodicity for UL transmission without UL grant for type 1 and type 2

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-TWG-periodicity' (see 38.321, section FFS\_Section)

-- The following periodicities are supported depending on the configured subcarrier spacing [ms]:

-- 15kHz: 2 symbols, 7 symbols, 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 32, 40, 64, 80, 128, 160, 320, 640

-- 30kHz: 2 symbols, 7 symbols, 0.5, 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 32, 40, 64, 80, 128, 160, 320, 640

-- 60kHz: 2 symbols, 7 symbols (6 symbols for ECP), 0.25,0.5,1,2,5,10,20,32, 40, 64, 80, 128, 160, 320, 640

-- 120kHz: 2 symbols, 7 symbols, 0.125,0.25,0.5,1,2,5,10,20, 32, 40, 64, 80, 128, 160, 320, 640 OPTIONAL,

periodicity ENUMERATED {sym2, sym7, ms0dot125, ms0dot25, ms0dot5, ms1, ms2, ms5, ms10, ms20,

ms32, ms40, ms64, ms80, ms128, ms160, ms320, ms640} OPTIONAL,

-- UL-SPS transmission with fully RRC-configured UL grant (Type1) (see 38.214, section x.x.x.x). FFS\_Ref

-- If not provided or set to release, use UL-SPS transmission with UL grant configured by DCI addressed to SPS-RNTI (Type2).

rrc-ConfiguredUplinkGrant CHOICE {

setup SEQUENCE {

-- FFS: Merge the following two into one. Possibly don’t use “periodicity” for rrcConfiguredUplinkGrant

timeDomainOffset ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

timeDomainAllocation ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}, -- RAN1 indicated just "Mapping-type,Index-start-len"

frequencyDomainAllocation ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

-- UE-specific DMRS configuration:

dmrs ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue},

mcsAndTBS INTEGER (0..31),

-- Enables intra-slot frequency hopping with the given frequency hopping offset

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'UL-TWG-hopping' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

frequencyHopping SetupRelease { SEQUENCE { ffs FFS\_Value } } OPTIONAL -- Need M

},

release NULL

} OPTIONAL -- Need M

} OPTIONAL -- Need M

}

-- TAG-SPS-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *SRS-Config*

The *SRS-Config* IE is used to configure sounding reference signal transmissions. The configuration defines a list of SRS-Resources and a list of SRS-ResourceSets. Each resource set defines a set of SRS-Resources. The network triggers the transmission of the set of SRS-Resources using a configured aperiodicSRS-ResourceTrigger (L1 DCI).

*SRS-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SRS-CONFIG-START

-- SRS configuration allowing to add and remove sets of SRS resources

SRS-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

srs-ResourceSetToReleaseList SEQUENCE (SIZE(0..maxNrofSRS-ResourceSets)) OF SRS-ResourceSetId OPTIONAL, -- Need M

srs-ResourceSetToAddModList  SEQUENCE (SIZE(0..maxNrofSRS-ResourceSets)) OF SRS-ResourceSet OPTIONAL, -- Need M

srs-ResourceToReleaseList SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxNrofSRS-Resources)) OF SRS-ResourceId OPTIONAL, -- Need M

srs-ResourceToAddModList SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxNrofSRS-Resources)) OF SRS-Resource OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- RNTI used for SRS TPC. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'TPC-SRS-RNTI' (see 38.213, section 10)

-- FFS: RAN1 models different RNTIs (on PDCCH) as different Search Spaces. Do the same here? Group e.g. with monitoring periodicity

-- and other PDCCH parameters (if any)

tpc-SRS-RNTI RNTI-Value OPTIONAL,

-- If absent, UE applies TPC commands via accumulation. If disabled, UE applies the TPC command without accumulation

-- (this applies to SRS when a separate closed loop is configured for SRS)

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'Accumulation-enabled-srs' (see 38,213, section 7.3)

tpc-Accumulation ENUMERATED {disabled} OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- Whether UE uses codebook based or non-codebook based transmission. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ulTxConfig' (see 38.214, section 6.1.1)

txConfig ENUMERATED {codebook, nonCodebook}

}

-- A set of SRS resources

SRS-ResourceSet ::= SEQUENCE {

srs-ResourceSetId SRS-ResourceSetId,

srs-ResourcesIds SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..maxNrofSRS-ResourcesPerSet)) OF SRS-ResourceId,

-- The DCI "code point" upon which the UE shall transmit SRS according to this SRS resource set configuration.

-- FFS: Verify definition and usage.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'AperiodicSRS-ResourceTrigger' (see 38.214, section FFS\_Section)

aperiodicSRS-ResourceTriggers SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofSRS-TriggerStates)) OF FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- ID of CSI-RS resource associated with SRS resource set in non-codebook based operation

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-AssocCSIRS' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

associatedCSI-RS NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId OPTIONAL, -- Cond nonCodebook

-- Indicates if the SRS resource set is used for beam management vs. used for either codebook based or non-codebook based transmission.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-SetUse' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

-- FFS\_CHECK: Isn't codebook/noncodebook already known from the ulTxConfig in the SRS-Config? If so, isn't the only distinction

-- in the set between BeamManagement, AtennaSwitching and "Other”? Or what happens if SRS-Config=Codebook but a Set=NonCodebook?

usage ENUMERATED {beamManagement, codebook, nonCodebook, antennaSwitching} OPTIONAL,

-- alpha value for SRS power control. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'alpha-srs' (see 38.213, section 7.3)

-- When the field is absent the UE applies the value 1

alpha Alpha OPTIONAL, -- Need S

-- P0 value for SRS power control. The value is in dBm. Only even values (step size 2) are allowed.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'p0-srs' (see 38.213, section 7.3)

p0 INTEGER (-202..24) OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- A reference signal (e.g. a CSI-RS config or a SSblock) to be used for SRS path loss estimation.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'srs-pathlossReference-rs-config' (see 38.213, section 7.3)

pathlossReferenceRS CHOICE {

ssb-Index SSB-Index,

csi-rs-Index NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId

} OPTIONAL, -- Need m

-- Indicates whether hsrs,c(i) = fc(i,1) or hsrs,c(i) = fc(i,2) (if twoPUSCH-PC-AdjustmentStates are configured)

-- or serarate close loop is configured for SRS. This parameter is applicable only for ULs on which UE also transmits PUSCH.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'srs-pcadjustment-state-config' (see 38.213, section 7.3)

srs-PowerControlAdjustmentStates ENUMERATED {sameAsFci1, sameAsFci2, separateClosedLoop} OPTIONAL, -- Need M

...

}

SRS-ResourceSetId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofSRS-ResourceSets-1)

SRS-Resource ::= SEQUENCE {

srs-ResourceId SRS-ResourceId,

nrofSRS-Ports ENUMERATED {port1, ports2, ports4},

-- Comb value (2 or 4) and comb offset. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-TransmissionComb' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

-- FFS: What is the “offset”?

transmissionComb CHOICE {

n2 SEQUENCE {

-- Cyclic shift configuration. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-CyclicShiftConfig' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

cyclicShift INTEGER (0..7) OPTIONAL

},

n4 SEQUENCE {

-- Cyclic shift configuration. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-CyclicShiftConfig' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

cyclicShift INTEGER (0..11) OPTIONAL

}

},

-- OFDM symbol location of the SRS resource within a slot including number of OFDM symbols (N = 1, 2 or 4 per SRS resource),

-- startPosition (SRSSymbolStartPosition = 0..5; "0" refers to the last symbol, "1" refers to the second last symbol) and

-- RepetitionFactor (r = 1, 2 or 4).

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-ResourceMapping' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1).

-- FFS: Apparently, RAN1 considers replacing these three fields by a table in RAN1 specs and a corresponding index in ASN.1?!

resourceMapping SEQUENCE {

startPosition INTEGER (0..5),

nrofSymbols ENUMERATED {n1, n2, n4},

repetitionFactor ENUMERATED {n1, n2, n4}

},

-- Parameter(s) defining frequency domain position and configurable shift to align SRS allocation to 4 PRB grid.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-FreqDomainPosition' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

freqDomainPosition INTEGER (0..67) OPTIONAL,

freqDomainShift INTEGER (0..268) OPTIONAL,

-- Includes parameters capturing SRS frequency hopping

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-FreqHopping' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

freqHopping SetupRelease { SEQUENCE {

c\_SRS INTEGER (0..63),

b\_SRS INTEGER (0..3),

b\_hop INTEGER (0..3)

} } OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Parameter(s) for configuring group or sequence hopping

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-GroupSequenceHopping' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

groupOrSequenceHopping ENUMERATED { neither, groupHopping, sequenceHopping } OPTIONAL,

-- Time domain behavior of SRS resource configuration

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-ResourceConfigType' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

-- FFS: Add configuration parameters for the different SRS resource types?

resourceType CHOICE {

aperiodic SEQUENCE {

},

semi-persistent SEQUENCE {

},

periodic SEQUENCE {

}

} OPTIONAL, -- Need M

-- Periodicity and slot offset for periodic/semi-persistent SRS. All values in "number of slots"

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-SlotConfig' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

periodicityAndOffset CHOICE {

sl1 NULL,

sl2 INTEGER(0..1),

sl5 INTEGER(0..4),

sl10 INTEGER(0..9),

sl20 INTEGER(0..19),

sl40 INTEGER(0..39),

sl80 INTEGER(0..79),

sl160 INTEGER(0..159),

sl320 INTEGER(0..319),

sl640 INTEGER(0..639),

sl1280 INTEGER(0..1279),

sl2560 INTEGER(0..2559)

},

-- Sequence ID used to initialize psedo random group and sequence hopping.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-SequenceId' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

sequenceId BIT STRING (SIZE (10)),

-- Includes parameters for configuration of carrier based SRS switching

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-CarrierSwitching' (see 38,214, section FFS\_Section)

carrierSwitching FFS\_Value OPTIONAL,

-- Reference to a CSI-RS for UE to to calculate UL candidate precoders for precoded periodic/sem-persistent SRS

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is this parameter meant to be here? It was listed under CSI/BeamManagement.

-- FFS\_Value: Is it correct that this can only be a CSI-RS resource? The spatialRelationInfo below says that it could be SSB, too?!

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DlMeasRSRef' (see 38.213, section FFS\_Section)

downlinkReferenceSignal NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId OPTIONAL,

-- Configuration of the spatial relation between a reference RS and the target SRS. Reference RS can be SSB/CSI-RS/SRS

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-SpatialRelationInfo' (see 38.214, section 6.2.1)

-- FFS\_Value: Check whether the CHOICE below is correct (L1 table was pretty vague). Can an SRS really be an RS for an SRS?

spatialRelationInfo CHOICE {

ssb-Index SSB-Index,

csi-RS NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceId,

srs SRS-ResourceId

} OPTIONAL,

-- Subset of PMIs addressed by TPMI, where PMIs are those supported by UEs with maximum coherence capabilities of "fully coherent",

-- "partially coherent", or "non-coherent" transmission. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ULCodebookSubset' (see 38.211, section 6.3.1.5)

codebookSubset ENUMERATED {fullAndPartialAndNonCoherent, partialCoherent, nonCoherent} OPTIONAL,

-- Subset of PMIs addressed by TRIs from 1 to ULmaxRank. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'ULmaxRank' (see 38.211, section 6.3.1.5)

maxRank ENUMERATED {port1, ports2, ports4} OPTIONAL

}

SRS-ResourceId ::= INTEGER (0..maxNrofSRS-Resources-1)

-- FFS\_FIXME: This configuration is not used anywhere.

-- FFS\_CHECK: Is this placed correctly?

SRS-CarrierSwitching ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Indicates the serving cell whose UL transmission may be interrupted during SRS transmission on a PUSCH-less cell.

-- During SRS transmission on a PUSCH-less cell, the UE may temporarily suspend the UL transmission on a serving cell with PUSCH

-- in the same CG to allow the PUSCH-less cell to transmit SRS. (see 38.214, section 6.2.1.3)

srs-SwitchFromServCellIndex INTEGER (0..31) OPTIONAL,

-- Network configures the UE with either typeA-SRS-TPC-PDCCH-Group or typeB-SRS-TPC-PDCCH-Group, if any.

srs-TPC-PDCCH-Group CHOICE {

-- Type A trigger configuration for SRS transmission on a PUSCH-less SCell.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'typeA-SRS-TPC-PDCCH-Group' (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

typeA SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..32)) OF SRS-TPC-PDCCH-Config,

-- Type B trigger configuration for SRS transmission on a PUSCH-less SCell.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'typeB-SRS-TPC-PDCCH-Config' (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

typeB SRS-TPC-PDCCH-Config

} OPTIONAL,

-- Maps a specific cell to a given SFI value within the DCI message

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-cell-to-SFI' (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

srs-CellToSFI SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofServingCells)) OF CellToSFI OPTIONAL,

-- Monitoring periodicity of SRS PDCCH in number of slots.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-monitoring-periodicity' (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

monitoringPeriodicity ENUMERATED {n1, n2, n5, n10, n20, spare3, spare2, spare1} OPTIONAL,

-- The number of PDCCH candidates for the configured aggregation level.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-Num-PDCCH-cand' (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

nrofPDCCH-Candidates ENUMERATED {n1, n2} OPTIONAL,

-- A set of serving cells for monitoring PDCCH conveying SRS DCI format with CRC scrambled by TPC-SRS-RNTI

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'SRS-monitoring-cells' (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

-- FFS\_CHECK: "Could this be on several serving cells? If so, it should be a list, right?

-- FFS: RAN1 models different RNTIs (on PDCCH) as different Search Spaces. Do the same here? Group e.g. with monitoring periodicity

-- and other PDCCH parameters (if any)

monitoringCells INTEGER (0.. 31) OPTIONAL

}

-- One trigger configuration. (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

SRS-TPC-PDCCH-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

-- RNTI for SRS trigger and power control using DCI format X (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

srs-TPC-RNTI RNTI-Value OPTIONAL,

-- The starting bit position of a block within the group DCI with SRS request fields (optional) and TPC commands

-- for a PUSCH-less SCell. (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

startingBitOfFormatX INTEGER (1..31) OPTIONAL,

-- The type of a field within the group DCI with SRS request fields (optional) and TPC commands for a PUSCH-less SCell,

-- which indicates how many bits in the field are for SRS request (0 or 1/2) and how many bits in the field are for TPC

-- (1 or 2). Note that for Type A, there is a common SRS request field for all SCells in the set, but each SCell has its

-- own TPC command bits. See TS 38.212. Network configures this field with the same value for all PUSCH-less SCells.

-- (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

fieldTypeFormatX INTEGER (1..4) OPTIONAL,

-- A list of paris of [cc-SetIndex; cc-IndexInOneCC-Set] (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

-- FFS: Improve description. What is a “CC”? Where is a CC-Set defined? ...

srs-CC-SetIndexlist SEQUENCE (SIZE(1..4)) OF SEQUENCE {

-- Indicates the CC set index for Type A associated (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

cc-SetIndex INTEGER (0..3) OPTIONAL,

-- Indicates the CC index in one CC set for Type A (see 38.212, 38.213, section 7.3.1, 11.3)

cc-IndexInOneCC-Set INTEGER (0..7) OPTIONAL

}

}

-- TAG-SRS-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *SSB-Index*

The IE *SSB-Index* identifies an SS-Block within an SS-Burst (FFS\_CHECK: Is this correct?)

*SSB-Index* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SSB-INDEX-START

SSB-Index ::= INTEGER (0..63)

-- TAG-SSB-INDEX-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *SubcarrierSpacing*

The *SubcarrierSpacing* IE determines the subcarrier spacing.

*SubcarrierSpacing* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SUBCARRIER-SPACING-START

-- Check value range! Currently used for subcarrierSpacingCommon (SIB1, Msg2, Msg4

-- FFS: Replace this 2-bit field by a 1-bit field: ENUMERATED {sc1, sc2}. Then define that sc1 = 15 kHz and sc2 = 30 kHz

-- when carrier frequency < 6 GHz and sc1 = 60 kHz and sc2 = 120 kHz when carrier frequency is > 6GHz?

SubcarrierSpacing ::= ENUMERATED {scs15or60, scs30or120}

-- 15 or 30 kHz (<6GHz), 120 and 240 kHz (>6GHz).

SubcarrierSpacingSSB ::= ENUMERATED {scs15or120, scs30or240}

-- FFS\_CHECK: Can probably be removed since PRACH Msg1 uses the SubcarrierSpacing values above.

SubcarrierSpacingRACH ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

-- TAG-SUBCARRIER-SPACING-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *TDD-UL-DL-Config*

The *TDD-UL-DL-Config* IEs determines the Uplink/Downlink TDD configuration. There are both, UE- and cell specific IEs.

*TDD-UL-DL-Config* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-TDD-UL-DL-CONFIG-START

TDD-UL-DL-ConfigCommon ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Reference SCS used to determine the time domain boundaries in the UL-DL pattern which must be common across all subcarrier specific

-- virtual carriers, i.e., independent of the actual subcarrier spacing using for data transmission.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'reference-SCS' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

referenceSubcarrierSpacing SubcarrierSpacing OPTIONAL,

-- Periodicity of the DL-UL pattern. Corresponds to L1 parameter 'DL-UL-transmission-periodicity' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

dl-UL-TransmissionPeriodicity ENUMERATED {ms0p5, ms0p625, ms1, ms1p25, ms2, ms2p5, ms5, ms10} OPTIONAL,

-- Number of consecutive full DL slots at the beginning of each DL-UL pattern.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'number-of-DL-slots' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_Value: Verify that 160 is correct (maximum number of slots within the longest period (10 ms) and the largest subcarrier spacing.

nrofDownlinkSlots INTEGER (0..160) OPTIONAL,

-- Number of consecutive DL symbols in the beginning of the slot following the last full DL slot (as derived from nrofDownlinkSlots).

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'number-of-DL-symbols-common' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section).

nrofDownlinkSymbols INTEGER (0..14) OPTIONAL,

-- Number of consecutive full UL slots at the end of each DL-UL pattern.

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'number-of-UL-slots' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

-- FFS\_Value: Verify that 160 is correct (maximum number of slots within the longest period (10 ms) and the largest subcarrier spacing.

nrofUplinkSlots INTEGER (0..160) OPTIONAL,

-- Number of consecutive UL symbols in the end of the slot preceding the first full UL slot (as derived from nrofUplinkSlots).

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'number-of-UL-symbols-common' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

nrofUplinkSymbols INTEGER (0..14) OPTIONAL

}

TDD-UL-DL-ConfigDedicated ::= SEQUENCE {

-- The slotSpecificConfiguration allows overriding UL/DL allocations provided in tdd-UL-DL-configurationCommon.

-- FFS\_ASN1: Consider making this an AddMod/Release list

-- FFS\_ASN1: Replace absolute numbers by variables... once RAN1 confirms.

-- FFS\_CHECK: This list will grow very large if used for many slots.

slotSpecificConfigurations SEQUENCE (SIZE (0..160)) OF

SEQUENCE {

-- Identifies a slot within a dl-UL-TransmissionPeriodicity (given in tdd-UL-DL-configurationCommon)

slotIndex INTEGER (0..160),

-- FFS\_ASN1: Consider a choice structure with options [allDownlink, allUplink, explicit] where the following two fields are provided

-- only in case of “explicit”.

-- Number of consecutive DL symbols in the beginning of the slot identified by slotIndex

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'number-of-DL-symbols-dedicated' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

nrofDownlinkSymbols INTEGER (0..maxSymbolIndex) OPTIONAL,

-- Number of consecutive UL symbols in the end of the slot identified by slotIndex

-- Corresponds to L1 parameter 'number-of-UL-symbols-dedicated' (see 38.211, section FFS\_Section)

nrofUplinkSymbols INTEGER (0..maxSymbolIndex) OPTIONAL

} OPTIONAL -- Need M

}

-- TAG-TDD-UL-DL-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

### 6.3.3 UE capability information elements

#### *– BandCombinationList*

The IE *BandCombinationList* contains a list of NR CA and/or MR-DC band combinations.

*BandCombinationList* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-BAND-COMBINATION-LIST-START

BandCombinationList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxBandComb)) OF BandCombination

BandCombination ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS How to decouple DL and UL

-- FFS How to address NC CA in relation to carrier separation

-- intraBandSimultaneousTxRx will be added with FFS (per UE or per band combination)

-- multipleTimingAdvance will be added with FFS (per UE or per band combination)

-- singleTx will be included per band combination

-- scalingFactor will be included per band per band combination

}

-- TAG-BAND-COMBINATION-LIST-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### *– RAT-Type*

The IE *RAT-Type* is used to indicate the radio access technology (RAT), including NR, of the requested/transferred UE capabilities.

*RAT-Type* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-RAT-TYPE-START

RAT-Type ::= ENUMERATED {nr, mrdc, spare1, ...}

-- FFS utra, geran-cs, geran-ps and cdma2000-1XRTT

-- TAG-RAT-TYPE-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### *–* *UE-CapabilityRAT-ContainerList*

The IE *UE-CapabilityRAT-ContainerList* contains a list of containers, one for each RAT for which UE capabilities are transferred, if any.

*UE-CapabilityRAT-ContainerList* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-UE-CAPABILITY-RAT-CONTAINER-LIST-START

UE-CapabilityRAT-ContainerList ::=SEQUENCE (SIZE (0.. maxRAT-CapabilityContainers)) OF UE-CapabilityRAT-Container

UE-CapabilityRAT-Container ::= SEQUENCE {

rat-Type RAT-Type,

ue-CapabilityRAT-Container OCTET STRING

}

-- TAG-UE-CAPABILITY-RAT-CONTAINER-LIST-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

|  |
| --- |
| *UE-CapabilityRAT-ContainerList field descriptions* |
| ***ue-CapabilityRAT-Container***  Container for the UE capabilities of the indicated RAT. The encoding is defined in the specification of each RAT:  For NR: the encoding of UE capabilities is defined in UE-NR-Capability.  For MRDC: the encoding of UE capabilities is defined in UE-MRDC-Capability  For E UTRA: the octet string contains the UE-EUTRA-Capability as defined in TS 36.331 [xx]. |

#### *– UE-MRDC-Capability*

The IE *UE-MRDC-Capability* is used to convey the UE Radio Access Capability Parameters for MR-DC, see TS 38.306 [yy].

*UE-MRDC-Capability* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-UE-MRDC-CAPABILITY-START

UE-MRDC-Capability ::= SEQUENCE {

measParameters-MRDC MeasParameters-MRDC,

rf-Parameters-MRDC RF-Parameters-MRDC,

phyLayerParameters-MRDC PhyLayerParameters-MRDC

-- FFS on other parameters

}

RF-Parameters-MRDC ::= SEQUENCE {

supportedBandCombination BandCombinationList

-- FFS on other parameters

}

PhyLayerParameters-MRDC ::= SEQUENCE {

supportedBasebandProcessingCombination-MRDC BasebandProcessingCombination-MRDC

-- FFS if supportedBasebandProcessingCombination-MRDC is included here or BandCombinationList

-- FFS on other parameters

}

BasebandProcessingCombination-MRDC ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxBasebandProcComb)) OF LinkedBasebandProcessingCombination

LinkedBasebandProcessingCombination ::= SEQUENCE {

basebandProcessingCombinationIndex-EUTRAN BasebandProcessingCombinationIndex,

basebandProcessingCombinationLinkedIndex-NR SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxBasebandProcComb)) OF BasebandProcessingCombinationIndex

}

BasebandProcessingCombinationIndex ::= INTEGER (1..maxBasebandProcComb)

MeasParameters-MRDC ::= SEQUENCE {

intraCarrierConcurrentMeas ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

independentGapConfig ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

sstd-MeasType1 ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-UE-MRDC-CAPABILITY-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### *– UE-NR-Capability*

The IE *UE-NR-Capability* is used to convey the NR UE Radio Access Capability Parameters, see TS 38.306 [yy].

*UE-NR-Capability* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-UE-NR-CAPABILITY-START

UE-NR-Capability ::= SEQUENCE {

pdcp-Parameters PDCP-Parameters,

rlc-Parameters RLC-Parameters, -- FFS OPTIONAL

mac-Parameters MAC-Parameters, -- FFS OPTIONAL

phyLayerParameters PhyLayerParameters,

rf-Parameters RF-Parameters,

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

PhyLayerParameters ::= SEQUENCE {

supportedBasebandProcessingCombination SupportedBasebandProcessingCombination

-- FFS on other parameters

}

RF-Parameters ::= SEQUENCE {

supportedBandListNR SupportedBandListNR,

supportedBandCombination BandCombinationList,

intraBandAsyncFDD ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL

-- FFS Whether intraBandAsyncFDD is included per UE or per band combination

}

SupportedBandListNR ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxBands)) OF BandNR

SupportedBandCombination ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxBandComb)) OF BandCombination

SupportedBasebandProcessingCombination ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxBasebandProcComb)) OF BasebandProcessingCombination

BasebandProcessingCombination ::= SEQUENCE {

basebandParametersPerBand SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxSimultaneousBands)) OF BasebandParametersPerBand

-- FFS on other parameters

}

BasebandParametersPerBand ::= SEQUENCE {

ca-BandwidthClassDL CA-BandwidthClass,

ca-BandwidthClassUL CA-BandwidthClass,

basebandParametersPerCC SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofCC)) OF BasebandParametersPerCC,

supportedBW-PerCC BW-PerCC

-- FFS on the need (e.g. if ca-BandwidthClass is sufficient to cover BW-PerCC)

-- FFS on other parameters

}

BasebandParametersPerCC ::= SEQUENCE {

supportedMIMO-CapabilityDL MIMO-Capability OPTIONAL,

supportedMIMO-CapabilityUL MIMO-Capability OPTIONAL,

modulationOrder ModulationOrder,

subCarrierSpacing SubCarrierSpacing

-- FFS if modulationOrder and subCarrierSpacing are included per Band or per CC

-- FFS on other parameters

}

BandNR ::= SEQUENCE {

bandNR FreqBandIndicatorNR,

supportedMIMO-CapabilityDL MIMO-Capability OPTIONAL,

supportedMIMO-CapabilityUL MIMO-Capability OPTIONAL

-- FFS on other parameters

}

CA-BandwidthClass ::= ENUMERATED {a, b, c, d, e, f, ...}

MIMO-Capability ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS on the parameters

}

ModulationOrder ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS on the parameters

}

SubCarrierSpacing ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS on the parameters

}

PDCP-Parameters ::= SEQUENCE {

supportedROHC-Profiles SEQUENCE {

profile0x0000 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0001 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0002 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0003 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0004 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0006 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0101 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0102 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0103 BOOLEAN,

profile0x0104 BOOLEAN

},

maxNumberROHC-ContextSessions ENUMERATED {cs2, cs4, cs8, cs12, cs16, cs24, cs32, cs48, cs64, cs128, cs256, cs512, cs1024, cs16384, spare2, spare1},

uplinkOnlyROHC-Profiles ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

continueROHC-Context ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

outOfOrderDelivery ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

shortSN ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

volteOverNR-PDCP ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL

}

RLC-Parameters ::= SEQUENCE {

am-WithShortSN ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

um-WithShortSN ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

um-WIthLongSN ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL

}

MAC-Parameters ::= SEQUENCE {

lcp-Restriction ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

skipUplinkTxDynamic ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

logicalChannelSR-DelayTimer ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

longDRX-Cycle ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

shortDRX-Cycle ENUMERATED {supported} OPTIONAL,

numberOfSR-Configurations ENUMERATED {n2, n3, n4, ...} OPTIONAL, -- FFS value range

numberOfConfiguredGrantConfigurations ENUMERATED {n2, n3, n4, ...} OPTIONAL -- FFS value range

}

-- TAG-UE-NR-CAPABILITY-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

### 6.3.4 Other information elements

## 6.4 RRC multiplicity and type constraint values

### – Multiplicity and type constraint definitions

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-MULTIPLICITY-AND-TYPE-CONSTRAINT-DEFINITIONS-START

maxBandComb INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of DL band combinations

maxBasebandProcComb INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of base band processing combinations

maxNrofServingCells INTEGER ::= 16 -- Max number of serving cells (SpCell + SCells) per cell group

maxNrofServingCells-1 INTEGER ::= 15 -- Max number of serving cells (SpCell + SCells) per cell group minus 1

maxNrofSCells INTEGER ::= 15 -- Max number of secondary serving cells per cell group

maxNrofCellMeas INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of entries in each of the cell lists in a measurement object

maxNrofSS-BlocksToAverage INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Max number for the (max) number of SS blocks to average to determine cell measurement

maxNrofCSI-RS-ResourcesToAverage INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Max number for the (max) number of CSI-RS to average to determine cell measurement

maxNrofSR-ConfigPerCellGroup INTEGER ::= 8 -- Maximum number of SR configurations per cell group

maxLCG-ID INTEGER ::= 7 -- Maximum value of LCG ID

maxLC-ID INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum value of Logical Channel ID

maxNrofTAGs INTEGER ::= 4 -- Maximum number of Timing Advance Groups

maxNrofTAGs-1 INTEGER ::= 3 -- Maximum number of Timing Advance Groups minus 1

maxNrofBWPs INTEGER ::= 4 -- Maximum number of BWPs per serving cell

maxNrofBWPs-1 INTEGER ::= 3 -- Maximum number of BWPs per serving cell minus 1

maxNrofBWP-Pair INTEGER ::= 4 -- Maximum number of BWPs per serving cell

maxSymbolIndex INTEGER ::= 13 -- Maximum index identifying a symbol within a slot (14 symbols, indexed from 0..13)

maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks INTEGER ::= 275 -- Maximum number of PRBs

maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocks-1 INTEGER ::= 274 -- Maximum number of PRBs

maxNrofPhysicalResourceBlocksTimes4 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of PRBs (used to reference PRBs in another subcarrier spacing)

maxNrofControlResourceSets INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Max number of CoReSets configurable on a serving cell

maxNrofControlResourceSets-1 INTEGER ::= 12 -- Max number of CoReSets configurable on a serving cell minus 1

maxCoReSetStartSymbol INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Highest possible start symbol for a control resource set

maxCoReSetDuration INTEGER ::= 3 -- Max number of OFDM symbols in a control resource set

maxNrofSearchSpacesPerCoReSet INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Max number of search spaces configurable per Control Resource Set

maxSFI-DCI-PayloadSize INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Max number payload of a DCI scrambled with SFI-RNTI

maxSFI-DCI-PayloadSize-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Max number payload of a DCI scrambled with SFI-RNTI minus 1

maxINT-DCI-PayloadSize INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Max number payload of a DCI scrambled with INT-RNTI

maxINT-DCI-PayloadSize-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Max number payload of a DCI scrambled with INT-RNTI minus 1

maxNrofRateMatchPatterns INTEGER ::= 4 -- Max number of rate matching patterns that may be configured

maxRateMatchPatternId INTEGER ::= 7 -- Max allowed rate matching pattern ID

maxNrofCSI-Reports INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of report configurations

maxNrofCSI-Reports-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of report configurations minus 1

maxNrofReportConfigIdsPerTrigger INTEGER ::= 16 -- Maximum number of report configurations per reportTrigger

maxNrofCSI-ResourceConfigurations INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of resource configurations

maxNrofCSI-ResourceConfigurations-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of resource configurations minus 1

maxNrofCSI-ResourceSets INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of resource sets per resource configuration

maxNrofCSI-ResourceSets-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of resource sets per resource configuration minus 1

maxNrofNZP-CSI-RS-Resources INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of Non-Zero-Power (NZP) CSI-RS resources

maxNrofNZP-CSI-RS-Resources-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of Non-Zero-Power (NZP) CSI-RS resources minus 1

maxNrofZP-CSI-RS-Resources INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of Zero-Power (NZP) CSI-RS resources

maxNrofZP-CSI-RS-Resources-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of Zero-Power (NZP) CSI-RS resources minus 1

maxNrofCSI-IM-Resources INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of CSI-IM resources. See CSI-IM-ResourceMax in 38.214.

maxNrofCSI-IM-Resources-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of CSI-IM resources minus 1. See CSI-IM-ResourceMax in 38.214.

maxNrofCSI-IM-ResourcesPerSet INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of CSI-IM resources per set. See CSI-IM-ResourcePerSetMax in 38.214

maxNrofCSI-IM-ResourcesPerSet-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of CSI-IM resources per set minus 1. See CSI-IM-ResourcePerSetMax

maxNrofSSB-Resources INTEGER ::= 64 -- Maximum number of SSB resources in a resource set

maxNrofSSB-Resources-1 INTEGER ::= 63 -- Maximum number of SSB resources in a resource set minus 1

maxNrofCSI-RS-ResourcesPerSet INTEGER ::= 8 -- Maximum number of CSI-RS resources per resource set

maxNrofCSI-MeasId INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of link configurations

maxNrofCSI-MeasId-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of link configurations minus 1

maxNrofCSI-RS-ResourcesRRM INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of CSI-RS resources for an RRM measurement object

maxNrofCSI-RS-ResourcesRRM-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of CSI-RS resources for an RRM measurement object minus 1

maxNrofObjectId INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of configured measurement objects

maxNrOfRA-PreamblesPerSSB INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of Random Access Preamble value per SSB

maxNrofReportConfigId INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of reporting configurations

maxNrofMeasId INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of configured measurements

maxNrofQuantityConfigmaxNrofQuantityConfig INTEGER ::= 2 -- Maximum number of quantity configurations

maxNrofSRS-ResourceSets INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of SRS resource sets.

maxNrofSRS-ResourceSets-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of SRS resource sets minus 1.

maxNrofSRS-Resources INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of SRS resources in an SRS resource set.

maxNrofSRS-Resources-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of SRS resources in an SRS resource set minus 1.

maxRA-PreambleIndex INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maxximum value of Random Access Preamble Index

maxRAT-CapabilityContainers INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of interworking RAT containers (incl NR and MRDC)

maxSimultaneousBands INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of simultaneously aggregated bands

maxNrofSlotFormatCombinationsPerSet INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of Slot Format Combinations in a SF-Set.

maxNrofSlotFormatCombinationsPerSet-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue -- Maximum number of Slot Format Combinations in a SF-Set minus 1.

maxNrofPUCCH-ResourceSets INTEGER ::= 4 -- Maximum number of PUCCH Resource Sets

maxNrofPUCCH-ResourceSets-1 INTEGER ::= 3 -- Maximum number of PUCCH Resource Sets minus 1.

maxNrofPUCCH-ResourcesPerSet INTEGER ::= 8 -- Maximum number of PUCCH Resources per PUCCH-ResourceSet

maxNrofPUCCH-ResourcesPerSet-1 INTEGER ::= 7 -- Maximum number of PUCCH Resources per PUCCH-ResourceSet minus 1.

maxNrofPUCCH-P0-PerSet INTEGER ::= 8 -- Maximum number of P0-pucch present in a p0-pucch set

maxNrofPUCCH-PathlossReferenceRSs INTEGER ::= 4 -- Maximum number of RSs used as pathloss reference for PUCCH power control.

maxNrofPUCCH-PathlossReferenceRSs-1 INTEGER ::= 3 -- Maximum number of RSs used as pathloss reference for PUCCH power control minus 1.

maxNrofP0-PUSCH-AlphaSets INTEGER ::= 30 -- Maximum number of P0-pusch-alpha-sets (see 38,213, section 7.1)

maxNrofP0-PUSCH-AlphaSets-1 INTEGER ::= 29 -- Maximum number of P0-pusch-alpha-sets minus 1 (see 38,213, section 7.1)

maxNrofPUSCH-PathlossReferenceRSs INTEGER ::= 4 -- Maximum number of RSs used as pathloss reference for PUSCH power control.

maxNrofPUSCH-PathlossReferenceRSs-1 INTEGER ::= 3 -- Maximum number of RSs used as pathloss reference for PUSCH power control minus 1.

maxEARFCN INTEGER ::= 262143 -- Highest value of extended E-UTRA EARFCN range

ffsmax INTEGER ::= ffsValue

ffsRange INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxBands INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxCellPrep INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxCellReport INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxCellSCG INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxDCI-Payload INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxDRB INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxFreq INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxLCH INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxLCid INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofCSI-RS INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofAggregatedCellsPerCellGroup INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofCandidateBeams INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofCSI-ReportConfig-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofCSI-ResrouceConfigurations INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofPCIsPerSMTC INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofPUCCH-PathlossReferenceRS-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofPUSCH-PathlossReferenceRS-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofQFIs INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSchedulingRequestResoruces INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSearchSpaces INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSlotFormatCombinations INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSlotFormatCombinations-1 INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSlotFormatsPerCombination INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSpatialRelationInfos INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSR-ConfigPerCellGroup INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSRS-ResourcesPerSet INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSRS-TriggerStates INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofIndexesToReport INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofSSBs INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofTCI-StatesPDCCH INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxNrofTCI-RS-Sets INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxQFI INTEGER ::= ffsValue

2maxRA-CSIRS-Resources INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxRA-SSB-Resources INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxRS-IndexReport INTEGER ::= ffsValue

maxSCellGroups INTEGER ::= ffsValue

ffsValue INTEGER ::= 64

-- IE definitions introduced to not get warning at ASN.1 syntax check

AdditionalReestabInfoList ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

AdditionalSpectrumEmission ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

ARFCN-ValueNR ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

BSR-Configuration ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

CandidateRS-IndexInfoList ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

CellIdentity ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

CSI-RS-Index ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

FilterCoefficient ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

Hysteresis ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

MeasGapConfig ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

MeasObjectEUTRA ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

MeasResultListEUTRA ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

MeasResultSSTD ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

PDU-SSessionID ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

PhyCellNR ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

PhysCellIdEUTRA ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

PhysCellIdRange ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

PhysicalCellId ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

P-Max ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

RadioBearerConfiguration ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

RA-Resources ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

ReportConfigEUTRA ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

ReportInterval ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

RRC-TransactionIdentifier ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

RSRP-Range ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

RSRQ-Range ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

SchedulingRequestId ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

ShortMAC-I ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

SINR-Range ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

SSB-Id ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

TAG-Configuration ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

TimeToTrigger ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

UECapabilityInformation ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

BW-PerCC ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

CellsTriggeredList ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

CellToSFI ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

FFS\_Value ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

FreqBandIndicatorNR ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

MBSFN-SubframeConfigList ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

NumberOfRA-Preambles ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

NZP-CSI-RS-ResourceConfigId ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

PUCCH-ResourceConfigPF0 ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

PUCCH-ResourceConfigPF1 ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

SchedulingRequestResourceConfig ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

SlotFormatIndicator ::= ENUMERATED {ffsTypeAndValue}

-- TAG-MULTIPLICITY-AND-TYPE-CONSTRAINT-DEFINITIONS-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

### – End of NR-RRC-Definitions

-- ASN1START

END

-- ASN1STOP

# 7 Variables and constants

## 7.1 Timers

### 7.1.1 Timers (Informative)

| Timer | Start | Stop | At expiry |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| T304 | Reception of *RRCConnectionReconfiguration* message including *MobilityControlInfoSCG* | Successful completion of random access on the PSCell, upon initiating re-establishment and upon SCG release | Inform E-UTRAN/NR about the SCG change failure by initiating the SCG failure information procedure as specified in 5.7.3. |
| T310 | Upon detecting physical layer problems for the PCell i.e. upon receiving N310 consecutive out-of-sync indications from lower layers | Upon receiving N311 consecutive in-sync indications from lower layers for the PCell, upon triggering the handover procedure and upon initiating the connection re-establishment procedure | If security is not activated: go to RRC\_IDLE else: initiate the connection re-establishment procedure |
| T311 | Upon initiating the RRC connection re-establishment procedure | Selection of a suitable NR cell or a cell using another RAT. | Enter RRC\_IDLE |
| T313 | Upon detecting physical layer problems for the PSCell i.e. upon receiving N313 consecutive out-of-sync indications from lower layers | Upon receiving N314 consecutive in-sync indications from lower layers for the PSCell, upon initiating the connection re-establishment procedure, upon SCG release and upon receiving *RRCConnectionReconfiguration* including *MobilityControlInfoSCG* | Inform E-UTRAN/NR about the SCG radio link failure by initiating the SCG failure information procedure as specified in 5.7.3. |

### 7.1.2 Timer handling

When the UE applies zero value for a timer, the timer shall be started and immediately expire unless explicitly stated otherwise.

## 7.2 Counters

| Counter | Reset | Incremented | When reaching max value |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  |  |  |  |

## 7.3 Constants

| Constant | Usage |
| --- | --- |
| N310 | Maximum number of consecutive "out-of-sync" indications for the PCell received from lower layers |
| N311 | Maximum number of consecutive "in-sync" indications for the PCell received from lower layers |
| N313 | Maximum number of consecutive "out-of-sync" indications for the PSCell received from lower layers |
| N314 | Maximum number of consecutive "in-sync" indications for the PSCell received from lower layers |

## 7.4 UE variables

NOTE: To facilitate the specification of the UE behavioural requirements, UE variables are represented using ASN.1. Unless explicitly specified otherwise, it is however up to UE implementation how to store the variables. The optionality of the IEs in ASN.1 is used only to indicate that the values may not always be available.

#### – *NR-UE-Variables*

This ASN.1 segment is the start of the NR UE variable definitions.

-- ASN1START

NR-UE-Variables DEFINITIONS AUTOMATIC TAGS ::=

BEGIN

IMPORTS

MeasId,

MeasIdToAddModList,

MeasObjectToAddModList,

PhysCellIdEUTRA,

PhyCellNR,

ReportConfigToAddModList,

RSRP-Range,

QuantityConfig,

maxNrofCellMeas,

maxNrofMeasId

FROM NR-RRC-Definitions;

-- ASN1STOP

#### – *VarMeasConfig*

The UE variable *VarMeasConfig* includes the accumulated configuration of the measurements to be performed by the UE, covering intra-frequency, inter-frequency and inter-RAT mobility related measurements.

*VarMeasConfig UE variable*

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-VAR-MEAS-CONFIG-START

VarMeasConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Measurement identities

measIdList MeasIdToAddModList OPTIONAL,

-- Measurement objects

measObjectList MeasObjectToAddModList OPTIONAL,

-- Reporting configurations

reportConfigList ReportConfigToAddModList OPTIONAL,

-- Other parameters

quantityConfig QuantityConfig OPTIONAL,

s-MeasureConfig CHOICE {

ssb-RSRP RSRP-Range,

csi-RSRP RSRP-Range

} OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-VAR-MEAS-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

Editor’s Note: FFS Revisit whether we really need *VarMeasConfig*.

#### – *VarMeasReportList*

The UE variable *VarMeasReportList* includes information about the measurements for which the triggering conditions have been met.

*VarMeasReportList UE variable*

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-VAR-MEAS-REPORT-START

VarMeasReportList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxNrofMeasId)) OF VarMeasReport

VarMeasReport ::= SEQUENCE {

-- List of measurement that have been triggered

measId MeasId,

cellsTriggeredList CellsTriggeredList OPTIONAL,

numberOfReportsSent INTEGER

}

CellsTriggeredList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1.. maxNrofCellMeas)) OF CHOICE {

physCellIdEUTRA PhysCellIdEUTRA,

phyCellNR PhyCellNR

}

-- TAG-VAR-MEAS-REPORT-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

#### – End of *NR-UE-Variables*

-- ASN1START

END

-- ASN1STOP

# 8 Protocol data unit abstract syntax

## 8.1 General

The RRC PDU contents in clause 6 and clause 10 are described using abstract syntax notation one (ASN.1) as specified in ITU-T Rec. X.680 [6] and X.681 [7]. Transfer syntax for RRC PDUs is derived from their ASN.1 definitions by use of Packed Encoding Rules, unaligned as specified in ITU-T Rec. X.691 [8].

The following encoding rules apply in addition to what has been specified in X.691:

- When a bit string value is placed in a bit-field as specified in 15.6 to 15.11 in X.691, the leading bit of the bit string value shall be placed in the leading bit of the bit-field, and the trailing bit of the bit string value shall be placed in the trailing bit of the bit-field.

NOTE: The terms 'leading bit' and 'trailing bit' are defined in ITU-T Rec. X.680. When using the 'bstring' notation, the leading bit of the bit string value is on the left, and the trailing bit of the bit string value is on the right.

- When decoding types constrained with the ASN.1 Contents Constraint ("CONTAINING"), automatic decoding of the contained type should not be performed because errors in the decoding of the contained type should not cause the decoding of the entire RRC message PDU to fail. It is recommended that the decoder first decodes the outer PDU type that contains the OCTET STRING or BIT STRING with the Contents Constraint, and then decodes the contained type that is nested within the OCTET STRING or BIT STRING as a separate step.

- When decoding a) RRC message PDUs, b) BIT STRING constrained with a Contents Constraint, or c) OCTET STRING constrained with a Contents Constraint, PER decoders are required to never report an error if there are extraneous zero or non-zero bits at the end of the encoded RRC message PDU, BIT STRING or OCTET STRING.

## 8.2 Structure of encoded RRC messages

An RRC PDU, which is the bit string that is exchanged between peer entities/across the radio interface contains the basic production as defined in X.691.

RRC PDUs shall be mapped to and from PDCP SDUs (in case of DCCH) or RLC SDUs (in case of PCCH, BCCH or CCCH) upon transmission and reception as follows:

- when delivering an RRC PDU as an PDCP SDU to the PDCP layer for transmission, the first bit of the RRC PDU shall be represented as the first bit in the PDCP SDU and onwards; and

- when delivering an RRC PDU as an RLC SDU to the RLC layer for transmission, the first bit of the RRC PDU shall be represented as the first bit in the RLC SDU and onwards; and

- upon reception of an PDCP SDU from the PDCP layer, the first bit of the PDCP SDU shall represent the first bit of the RRC PDU and onwards; and

- upon reception of an RLC SDU from the RLC layer, the first bit of the RLC SDU shall represent the first bit of the RRC PDU and onwards.

## 8.3 Basic production

The 'basic production' is obtained by applying UNALIGNED PER to the abstract syntax value (the ASN.1 description) as specified in X.691. It always contains a multiple of 8 bits.

## 8.4 Extension

The following rules apply with respect to the use of protocol extensions:

- A transmitter compliant with this version of the specification shall, unless explicitly indicated otherwise on a PDU type basis, set the extension part empty. Transmitters compliant with a later version may send non-empty extensions;

- A transmitter compliant with this version of the specification shall set spare bits to zero;

## 8.5 Padding

If the encoded RRC message does not fill a transport block, the RRC layer shall add padding bits. This applies to PCCH and BCCH.

Padding bits shall be set to 0 and the number of padding bits is a multiple of 8.



Figure 8.5-1: RRC level padding

# 9 Specified and default radio configurations

Specified and default configurations are configurations of which the details are specified in the standard. Specified configurations are fixed while default configurations can be modified using dedicated signalling.

Editor’s Note: FFS / FIXME: Default configurations

## 9.1 Specified configurations

Editor’s Note: FFS

## 9.2 Default radio configurations

### 9.2.1 SRB configurations

#### 9.2.1.1 SRB1/SRB1S

Parameters (FFS)

| Name | Value | Semantics description | Ver |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| RLC configuration CHOICE | am |  |  |
| *ul-RLC-Config*  *>t-PollRetransmit*  *>pollPDU*  *>pollByte*  *>maxRetxThreshold* | ms45  infinity  infinity  t4 |  |  |
| *dl-RLC-Config*  *>t-Reordering*  *>t-StatusProhibit*  *>enableStatusReportSN-Gap* | ms35  ms0  N/A |  |  |
| Logical channel configuration |  |  |  |
| *priority* | 1 | Highest priority |  |
| *prioritisedBitRate* | infinity |  |  |
| *bucketSizeDuration* | N/A |  |  |
| *logicalChannelGroup* | 0 |  |  |
| *logicalChannelSR-Prohibit* | N/A |  |  |

#### 9.2.1.2 SRB2/SRB2S

Parameters (FFS)

| Name | Value | Semantics description | Ver |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| RLC configuration CHOICE | am |  |  |
| *ul-RLC-Config*  *>t-PollRetransmit*  *>pollPDU*  *>pollByte*  *>maxRetxThreshold* | ms45  infinity  infinity  t4 |  |  |
| *dl-RLC-Config*  *>t-Reordering*  *>t-StatusProhibit* | ms35  ms0 |  |  |
| Logical channel configuration |  |  |  |
| *priority* | 3 |  |  |
| *prioritisedBitRate* | infinity |  |  |
| *bucketSizeDuration* | N/A |  |  |
| *logicalChannelGroup* | 0 |  |  |

#### 9.2.1.3 SRB3

Parameters (FFS)

| Name | Value | Semantics description | Ver |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| RLC configuration CHOICE | am |  |  |
| *ul-RLC-Config*  *>t-PollRetransmit*  *>pollPDU*  *>pollByte*  *>maxRetxThreshold* | ms45  infinity  infinity  t4 |  |  |
| *dl-RLC-Config*  *>t-Reordering*  *>t-StatusProhibit*  *>enableStatusReportSN-Gap* | ms35  ms0  N/A |  |  |
| Logical channel configuration |  |  |  |
| *priority* | 1 | Highest priority |  |
| *prioritisedBitRate* | infinity |  |  |
| *bucketSizeDuration* | N/A |  |  |
| *logicalChannelGroup* | 0 |  |  |
| *logicalChannelSR-Prohibit* | N/A |  |  |

### 9.2.2 SRB configurations

#### 9.2.2.1 SRB1/SRB1S

Parameters

| Name | Value | Semantics description | Ver |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| RLC configuration |  |  |  |
| *logicalChannelIdentity* | 1 |  |  |

#### 9.2.2.2 SRB2/SRB2S

Parameters

| Name | Value | Semantics description | Ver |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| RLC configuration |  |  |  |
| *logicalChannelIdentity* | 2 |  |  |

#### 9.2.2.3 SRB3

Parameters

| Name | Value | Semantics description | Ver |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| RLC configuration |  |  |  |
| *logicalChannelIdentity* | 3 |  |  |

# 10 Generic error handling

## 10.1 General

The generic error handling defined in the subsequent sub-clauses applies unless explicitly specified otherwise e.g. within the procedure specific error handling.

The UE shall consider a value as not comprehended when it is set:

- to an extended value that is not defined in the version of the transfer syntax supported by the UE.

- to a spare or reserved value unless the specification defines specific behaviour that the UE shall apply upon receiving the concerned spare/reserved value.

The UE shall consider a field as not comprehended when it is defined:

- as spare or reserved unless the specification defines specific behaviour that the UE shall apply upon receiving the concerned spare/reserved field.

## 10.2 ASN.1 violation or encoding error

The UE shall:

1> when receiving an RRC message on the [FFS] for which the abstract syntax is invalid [6]:

2> ignore the message;

NOTE: This section applies in case one or more fields is set to a value, other than a spare, reserved or extended value, not defined in this version of the transfer syntax. E.g. in the case the UE receives value 12 for a field defined as INTEGER (1..11). In cases like this, it may not be possible to reliably detect which field is in the error hence the error handling is at the message level.

## 10.3 Field set to a not comprehended value

The UE shall, when receiving an RRC message on any logical channel:

1> if the message includes a field that has a value that the UE does not comprehend:

2> if a default value is defined for this field:

3> treat the message while using the default value defined for this field;

2> else if the concerned field is optional:

3> treat the message as if the field were absent and in accordance with the need code for absence of the concerned field;

2> else:

3> treat the message as if the field were absent and in accordance with sub-clause 10.4;

## 10.4 Mandatory field missing

The UE shall:

1> if the message includes a field that is mandatory to include in the message (e.g. because conditions for mandatory presence are fulfilled) and that field is absent or treated as absent:

2> if the RRC message was received on DCCH or CCCH:

3> ignore the message;

2> else:

3> if the field concerns a (sub-field of) an entry of a list (i.e. a SEQUENCE OF):

4> treat the list as if the entry including the missing or not comprehended field was not present;

3> else if the field concerns a sub-field of another field, referred to as the 'parent' field i.e. the field that is one nesting level up compared to the erroneous field:

4> consider the 'parent' field to be set to a not comprehended value;

4> apply the generic error handling to the subsequent 'parent' field(s), until reaching the top nesting level i.e. the message level;

3> else (field at message level):

4> ignore the message;

NOTE 1: The error handling defined in these sub-clauses implies that the UE ignores a message with the message type or version set to a not comprehended value.

NOTE 2: The nested error handling for messages received on logical channels other than DCCH and CCCH applies for errors in extensions also, even for errors that can be regarded as invalid NR operation e.g. NR not observing conditional presence.

The following ASN.1 further clarifies the levels applicable in case of nested error handling for errors in extension fields.

-- /example/ ASN1START

-- Example with extension addition group

ItemInfoList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..max)) OF ItemInfo

ItemInfo ::= SEQUENCE {

itemIdentity INTEGER (1..max),

field1 Field1,

field2 Field2 OPTIONAL, -- Need N

...

[[ field3-r9 Field3-r9 OPTIONAL, -- Cond Cond1

field4-r9 Field4-r9 OPTIONAL -- Need N

]]

}

-- Example with traditional non-critical extension (empty sequence)

BroadcastInfoBlock1 ::= SEQUENCE {

itemIdentity INTEGER (1..max),

field1 Field1,

field2 Field2 OPTIONAL, -- Need N

nonCriticalExtension BroadcastInfoBlock1-v940-IEs OPTIONAL

}

BroadcastInfoBlock1-v940-IEs::= SEQUENCE {

field3-r9 Field3-r9 OPTIONAL, -- Cond Cond1

field4-r9 Field4-r9 OPTIONAL, -- Need N

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL -- Need S

}

-- ASN1STOP

The UE shall, apply the following principles regarding the levels applicable in case of nested error handling:

- an extension additon group is not regarded as a level on its own. E.g. in the ASN.1 extract in the previous, a error regarding the conditionality of *field3* would result in the entire itemInfo entry to be ignored (rather than just the extension addition group containing *field3* and *field4*)

- a traditional *nonCriticalExtension* is not regarded as a level on its own. E.g. in the ASN.1 extract in the previous, a error regarding the conditionality of *field3* would result in the entire *BroadcastInfoBlock1* to be ignored (rather than just the non critical extension containing *field3* and *field4*).

## 10.5 Not comprehended field

The UE shall, when receiving an RRC message on any logical channel:

1> if the message includes a field that the UE does not comprehend:

2> treat the rest of the message as if the field was absent;

NOTE: This section does not apply to the case of an extension to the value range of a field. Such cases are addressed instead by the requirements in section 10.3.

# 11 Radio information related interactions between network nodes

## 11.1 General

This section specifies RRC messages that are transferred between network nodes. These RRC messages may be transferred to or from the UE via another Radio Access Technology. Consequently, these messages have similar characteristics as the RRC messages that are transferred across the NR radio interface, i.e. the same transfer syntax and protocol extension mechanisms apply.

## 11.2 Inter-node RRC messages

### 11.2.1 General

This section specifies RRC messages that are sent either across the Xn- or the NG-interface, either to or from the gNB, i.e. a single 'logical channel' is used for all RRC messages transferred across network nodes. The information could originate from or be destined for another RAT.

-- ASN1START

NR-InterNodeDefinitions DEFINITIONS AUTOMATIC TAGS ::=

BEGIN

IMPORTS

AdditionalReestabInfoList,

ARFCN-ValueNR,

CandidateRS-IndexInfoList,

CellIdentity,

maxCellPrep,

maxCellSCG,

maxRS-IndexReport,

MeasResultSSTD,

P-Max,

PhysCellId,

RadioBearerConfiguration,

RRCReconfiguration,

RSRP-Range,

RSRQ-Range,

SSB-Index,

ShortMAC-I,

UECapabilityInformation,

UE-CapabilityRAT-ContainerList

FROM NR-RRC-Definitions;

-- ASN1STOP

### 11.2.2 Message definitions

#### – *HandoverCommand*

This message is used to transfer the handover command as generated by the target gNB.

Direction: target gNB to source gNB/source RAN

*HandoverCommand* message

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-HANDOVER-COMMAND-START

HandoverCommand ::= SEQUENCE {

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE{

handoverCommand-r15 HandoverCommand-r15-IEs,

spare3 NULL, spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

HandoverCommand-r15-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

handoverCommandMessage OCTET STRING (CONTAINING RRCReconfiguration),

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

-- TAG-HANDOVER-COMMAND-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

|  |
| --- |
| *HandoverCommand field descriptions* |
| ***handoverCommandMessage***  Contains the *RRCConnectionReconfiguration* message used to perform handover within NR or handover to NR, as generated (entirely) by the target gNB. |

#### – *HandoverPreparationInformation*

This message is used to transfer the NR RRC information used by the target gNB during handover preparation, including UE capability information.

Direction: source gNB/source RAN to target gNB

*HandoverPreparationInformation* message

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-HANDOVER-PREPARATION-INFORMATION-START

HandoverPreparationInformation ::= SEQUENCE {

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE{

handoverPreparationInformation-r15 HandoverPreparationInformation-r15-IEs,

spare3 NULL, spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

HandoverPreparationInformation-r15-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

ue-CapabilityRAT-List UE-CapabilityRAT-ContainerList,

sourceConfig OCTET STRING (CONTAINING RRCReconfiguration),

rrm-Config RRM-Config OPTIONAL,

as-Context AS-Context OPTIONAL,

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

AS-Context ::= SEQUENCE {

reestablishmentInfo SEQUENCE {

sourcePhysCellId PhysCellId,

targetCellShortMAC-I ShortMAC-I,

additionalReestabInfoList AdditionalReestabInfoList OPTIONAL

} OPTIONAL,

-- FFS Whether to change e.g. move all re-establishment info to Xx

configRestrictInfo ConfigRestrictInfoSCG OPTIONAL,

...

}

ReestabNCellInfoList ::= SEQUENCE ( SIZE (1..maxCellPrep) ) OF ReestabNCellInfo

ReestabNCellInfo::= SEQUENCE{

cellIdentity CellIdentity,

key-gNodeB-Star BIT STRING (SIZE (256)),

shortMAC-I ShortMAC-I

}

RRM-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

ue-InactiveTime INTEGER,

candidateCellInfoList CandidateCellInfoList OPTIONAL,

...

}

-- TAG-HANDOVER-PREPARATION-INFORMATION-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

|  |
| --- |
| *HandoverPreparationInformation field descriptions* |
| ***as-Context***  Local RAN context required by the target gNB. |
| ***sourceConfig***  The radio resource configuration as used in the source cell. |
| ***rrm-Config***  Local RAN context used mainly for RRM purposes. |
| ***ue-CapabilityRAT-List*** The UE radio access related capabilities concerning RATs supported by the UE. FFS whether certain capabilities are mandatory to provide by source e.g. of target and/or source RAT. |

#### – *SCG-Config*

This message is used to transfer the SCG radio configuration as generated by the SgNB.

Direction: Secondary gNB to master gNB or eNB

*SCG-Config* message

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SCG-CONFIG-START

SCG-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE{

scg-Config-r15 SCG-Config-r15-IEs,

spare3 NULL, spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

SCG-Config-r15-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

scg-CellGroupConfig OCTET STRING (CONTAINING RRCReconfiguration) OPTIONAL,

p-maxFR1 P-Max OPTIONAL,

scg-RB-Config OCTET STRING (CONTAINING RadioBearerConfiguration) OPTIONAL,

configRestrictModReq ConfigRestrictModReqSCG OPTIONAL,

candidateCellInfoList CandidateCellInfoList OPTIONAL,

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

ConfigRestrictModReqSCG ::= SEQUENCE {

requestedBC-List-NR SEQUENCE OF INTEGER OPTIONAL,

requestedBPC-List-NR SEQUENCE OF INTEGER OPTIONAL,

-- FFS Signalling details of BC and BPC restrictions requested by SgNB to be alleviated

...

}

-- TAG-SCG-CONFIG-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

|  |
| --- |
| *SCG-Config* field descriptions |
| ***p-maxFR1***  Indicates the maximum power for FR1 (see TS 38.104 [12]) the UE can use in NR SCG. |
| ***scg-CellGroupConfig***  Contains the RRCReconfiguration message, used to (re-)configure the SCG configuration upon SCG establishment or modification, as generated (entirely) by the target SgNB |
| ***scg-RB-Config***  Contains the IE RadioBearerConfig, used to establish or reconfigure the SCG configuration, used to (re-)configure the SCG RB configuration upon SCG establishment or modification, as generated (entirely) by the target SgNB |
| ***configRestrictModReq***  Used by SN to re-negotiate SCG configuration restrictions previously set by MN to ensure UE capabilities are respected. E.g. used to request configure an NR band combination which use MN has previously forbidden. |

#### – *SCG-ConfigInfo*

This message is used by master eNB or gNB to request the SgNB to perform certain actions e.g. to establish, modify or release an SCG. The message may include additional information e.g. to assist the SgNB to set the SCG configuration.

Direction: Master eNB or gNB to secondary gNB

*SCG-ConfigInfo* message

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-SCG-CONFIG-INFO-START

SCG-ConfigInfo ::= SEQUENCE {

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE{

scg-ConfigInfo-r15 SCG-ConfigInfo-r15-IEs,

spare3 NULL, spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

SCG-ConfigInfo-r15-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

eutra-CapabilityInfo OCTET STRING (CONTAINING UECapabilityInformation) OPTIONAL,

candidateCellInfoList CandidateCellInfoList OPTIONAL,

measResultSSTD MeasResultSSTD OPTIONAL,

configRestrictInfo ConfigRestrictInfoSCG OPTIONAL,

drx-InfoMCG DRX-Info OPTIONAL,

sourceConfigSCG OCTET STRING (CONTAINING RRCReconfiguration) OPTIONAL,

p-maxFR1 P-Max OPTIONAL,

mcg-RB-Config OCTET STRING (CONTAINING RadioBearerConfiguration) OPTIONAL,

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

ConfigRestrictInfoSCG ::= SEQUENCE {

restrictedBandCombinationNR INTEGER OPTIONAL,

restrictedBasebandCombinationNR-NR SEQUENCE OF INTEGER OPTIONAL,

-- FFS Signalling details of BC and BPC restrictions to be observed by SgNB

-- FFS Signalling details regarding power coordination

maxMeasFreqsSCG-NR INTEGER OPTIONAL,

...

}

DRX-Info ::= SEQUENCE {

cycle INTEGER,

offset INTEGER

}

-- TAG-SCG-CONFIG-INFO-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

|  |
| --- |
| *SCG-ConfigInfo field descriptions* |
| ***candidateCellInfoList***  Contains information regarding cells that the source suggests the target gNB to consider configuring. |
| ***mcg-RB-Config***  Contains the IE RadioBearerConfig of the MN, used to support delta configuration for bearer type change between MN terminated to SN terminated bearer and SN change. |
| ***p-maxFR1***  Indicates the maximum power for FR1 (see TS 38.104 [12]) the UE can use in NR SCG. |
| ***sourceConfigSCG***Includes the current dedicated SCG configuration in the same format as SCG-Config, i.e. not only CellGroupConfig but also e.g. rb-Config, measConfig. |
| ***ConfigRestrictInfo***  Includes fields for which SgNB is explictly indicated to observe a configuration restriction. |
| ***restrictedBandCombinationNR***  Indicates restrictions regarding the NR BCs the SN can configure by signalling the LTE BC selected by MN. The SN may configure any EN-BC including the indicated LTE BC selected by MN. |
| ***restrictedBasebandCombinationNR***  Indicates restrictions regarding the NR BPCs the SN can/cannot configure i.e. by signalling the list of NR BPC the SN may configure. |

## 11.3 Inter-node RRC information element definitions

#### – *CandidateCellInfoList*

The *CandidateCellInfoList* IE contains information regarding cells that the source suggests the target gNB to consider configuring.

*CandidateCellInfoList* information element

-- ASN1START

-- TAG-CANDIDATE-CELL-INFO-LIST-START

CandidateCellInfoList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxCellSCG)) OF CandidateCellInfo

CandidateCellInfo ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS whether to introduce something additional for transfer of SN configured measurements

cellIdentification SEQUENCE {

physCellId PhysCellId,

dl-CarrierFreq ARFCN-ValueNR

},

measResultCell SEQUENCE {

rsrpResultCell RSRP-Range,

rsrqResultCell RSRQ-Range

-- FFS whether to support SINR

} OPTIONAL,

candidateRS-IndexList CandidateRS-IndexInfoList OPTIONAL,

...

}

CandidateBeamInfoList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..maxRS-IndexReport)) OF CandidateRS-IndexInfo

CandidateRS-IndexInfo ::= SEQUENCE {

-- FFS whether to support CSI RS based beam results also

ssb-Index SSB-Index,

measResultSSB SEQUENCE {

rsrpResultCell RSRP-Range,

rsrqResultCell RSRQ-Range

-- FFS whether to support SINR

} OPTIONAL,

...

}

-- TAG-CANDIDATE-CELL-INFO-LIST-STOP

-- ASN1STOP

## 11.4 Inter-node RRC multiplicity and type constraint values

### – End of *NR-InterNodeDefinitions*

-- ASN1START

END

-- ASN1STOP

# 12 Processing delay requirements for RRC procedures

The UE performance requirements for RRC procedures are specified in the following tables. The performance requirement is expressed as the time in [ms] from the end of reception of the network -> UE message on the UE physical layer up to when the UE shall be ready for the reception of uplink grant for the UE -> network response message with no access delay other than the TTI-alignment (e.g. excluding delays caused by scheduling, the random access procedure or physical layer synchronisation).



Figure 11.2-1: Illustration of RRC procedure delay

Table 11.2-1: UE performance requirements for RRC procedures for UEs

| **Procedure title:** | **Network -> UE** | **UE -> Network** | **Value [ms]** | **Notes** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **RRC Connection Control Procedures** | | | | |
| RRC reconfiguration | *RRCReconfiguration* | *RRCReconfigurationComplete* | X |  |

Annex A (informative): Guidelines, mainly on use of ASN.1

A.1 Introduction

The following clauses contain guidelines for the specification of RRC protocol data units (PDUs) with ASN.1.

A.2 Procedural specification

A.2.1 General principles

The procedural specification provides an overall high level description regarding the UE behaviour in a particular scenario.

It should be noted that most of the UE behaviour associated with the reception of a particular field is covered by the applicable parts of the PDU specification. The procedural specification may also include specific details of the UE behaviour upon reception of a field, but typically this should be done only for cases that are not easy to capture in the PDU section e.g. general actions, more complicated actions depending on the value of multiple fields.

Likewise, the procedural specification need not specify the UE requirements regarding the setting of fields within the messages that are sent to the network i.e. this may also be covered by the PDU specification.

A.2.2 More detailed aspects

The following more detailed conventions should be used:

- Bullets:

- Capitals should be used in the same manner as in other parts of the procedural text i.e. in most cases no capital applies since the bullets are part of the sentence starting with 'The UE shall:'

- All bullets, including the last one in a sub-clause, should end with a semi-colon i.e. an ';'

- Conditions

- Whenever multiple conditions apply, a semi-colon should be used at the end of each conditions with the exception of the last one, i.e. as in 'if cond1, or cond2:

A.3 PDU specification

A.3.1 General principles

A.3.1.1 ASN.1 sections

The RRC PDU contents are formally and completely described using abstract syntax notation (ASN.1), see X.680 [13], X.681 (02/2002) [14].

The complete ASN.1 code is divided into a number of ASN.1 sections in the specifications. In order to facilitate the extraction of the complete ASN.1 code from the specification, each ASN.1 section begins with the following:

- a first text paragraph consisting entirely of an *ASN.1 start tag*, which consists of a double hyphen followed by a single space and the text string "ASN1START" (in all upper case letters).

- a second text paragraph consisting entirely of a *block start tag* is included, which consists of a double hyphen followed by a single space and the text string "TAG\_NAME\_START" (in all upper case letters), where the "NAME" refers to the main name of the paragraph (in all upper-case letters).

Similarly, each ASN.1 section ends with the following:

- a first text paragraph consisting entirely of a *block* *stop tag*, which consists of a double hyphen followed by a single space and the text string "TAG\_NAME\_STOP" (in all upper-case letters), where the "NAME" refers to the main name of the paragraph (in all upper-case letters).

- a second text paragraph consisting entirely of an *ASN.1 stop tag*, which consists of a double hyphen followed by a singlespace and the text "ASN1STOP" (in all upper case letters):

This results in the following tags:

-- ASN1START

-- TAG\_NAME\_START

-- TAG\_NAME\_STOP

-- ASN1STOP

The text paragraphs containing either of thestart and stop tags should not contain any ASN.1 code significant for the complete description of the RRC PDU contents. The complete ASN.1 code may be extracted by copying all the text paragraphs between an ASN.1 start tag and the following ASN.1 stop tag in the order they appear, throughout the specification.

NOTE: A typical procedure for extraction of the complete ASN.1 code consists of a first step where the entire RRC PDU contents description (ultimately the entire specification) is saved into a plain text (ASCII) file format, followed by a second step where the actual extraction takes place, based on the occurrence of the ASN.1 start and stop tags.

A.3.1.2 ASN.1 identifier naming conventions

The naming of identifiers (i.e., the ASN.1 field and type identifiers) should be based on the following guidelines:

- Message (PDU) identifiers should be ordinary mixed case without hyphenation. These identifiers, *e.g.*, the *RRCConnectionModificationCommand*, should be used for reference in the procedure text. Abbreviations should be avoided in these identifiers and abbreviated forms of these identifiers should not be used.

- Type identifiers other than PDU identifiers should be ordinary mixed case, with hyphenation used to set off acronyms only where an adjacent letter is a capital, *e.g.*, *EstablishmentCause, SelectedPLMN* (not *Selected-PLMN*, since the "d" in "Selected" is lowercase)*, InitialUE-Identity* and *MeasSFN-SFN-TimeDifference*.

- Field identifiers shall start with a lowercase letter and use mixed case thereafter, *e.g.*, *establishmentCause*. If a field identifier begins with an acronym (which would normally be in upper case), the entire acronym is lowercase (*plmn-Identity*, not *pLMN-Identity*). The acronym is set off with a hyphen (*ue-Identity*, not *ueIdentity*), in order to facilitate a consistent search pattern with corresponding type identifiers.

- Identifiers should convey the meaning of the identifier and should avoid adding unnecessary postfixes (e.g. abstractions like 'Info') for the name.

- Identifiers that are likely to be keywords of some language, especially widely used languages, such as C++ or Java, should be avoided to the extent possible.

- Identifiers, other than PDU identifiers, longer than 25 characters should be avoided where possible. It is recommended to use abbreviations, which should be done in a consistent manner i.e. use 'Meas' instead of 'Measurement' for all occurrences. Examples of typical abbreviations are given in table A.3.1.2.1-1 below.

- *For future extension:* When an extension is introduced a suffix is added to the identifier of the concerned ASN.1 field and/or type. A suffix of the form "‑rX" is used, with X indicating the release, for ASN.1 fields or types introduced in a later release (i.e. a release later than the original/first release of the protocol) as well as for ASN.1 fields or types for which a revision is introduced in a later release replacing a previous version, *e.g.*, *Foo-r9* for the Rel-9 version of the ASN.1 type *Foo*. A suffix of the form "‑rXb" is used for the first revision of a field that it appears in the same release (X) as the original version of the field, "‑rXc" for a second intra-release revision and so on. A suffix of the form "‑vXYZ" is used for ASN.1 fields or types that only are an extension of a corresponding earlier field or type (see sub-clause A.4), e.g., *AnElement-v10b0* for the extension of the ASN.1 type *AnElement* introduced in version 10.11.0 of the specification. A number *0...9, 10, 11, etc.* is used to represent the first part of the version number, indicating the release of the protocol. Lower case letters *a, b, c, etc.* are used to represent the second (and third) part of the version number if they are greater than 9. In the procedural specification, in field descriptions as well as in headings suffices are not used, unless there is a clear need to distinguish the extension from the original field.

- More generally, in case there is a need to distinguish different variants of an ASN.1 field or IE, a suffix should be added at the end of the identifiers e.g. *MeasObjectUTRA*, *ConfigCommon*. When there is no particular need to distinguish the fields (e.g. because the field is included in different IEs), a common field identifier name may be used. This may be attractive e.g. in case the procedural specification is the same for the different variants.

**Table A.3.1.2-1: Examples of typical abbreviations used in ASN.1 identifiers**

| **Abbreviation** | **Abbreviated word** |
| --- | --- |
| Config | Configuration |
| DL | Downlink |
| Ext | Extension |
| Freq | Frequency |
| Id | Identity |
| Ind | Indication |
| Meas | Measurement |
| MIB | MasterInformationBlock |
| Neigh | Neighbour(ing) |
| Param(s) | Parameter(s) |
| Phys | Physical |
| PCI | Physical Cell Id |
| Proc | Process |
| Reconfig | Reconfiguration |
| Reest | Re-establishment |
| Req | Request |
| Rx | Reception |
| Sched | Scheduling |
| SIB | SystemInformationBlock |
| Sync | Synchronisation |
| Thr | Threshold |
| Tx | Transmission |
| UL | Uplink |

NOTE: The table A.3.1.2.1-1 is not exhaustive. Additional abbreviations may be used in ASN.1 identifiers when needed.

A.3.1.3 Text references using ASN.1 identifiers

A text reference into the RRC PDU contents description from other parts of the specification is made using the ASN.1 field identifier of the referenced type. The ASN.1 field and type identifiers used in text references should be in the *italic font style*. The "do not check spelling and grammar" attribute in Word should be set. Quotation marks (i.e., " ") should not be used around the ASN.1 field or type identifier.

A reference to an RRC PDU should be made using the corresponding ASN.1 field identifier followed by the word "message", e.g., a reference to the *rrcRelease* message.

A reference to a specific part of an RRC PDU, or to a specific part of any other ASN.1 type, should be made using the corresponding ASN.1 field identifier followed by the word "field", e.g., a reference to the *prioritisedBitRate* field in the example below.

-- /example/ ASN1START

LogicalChannelConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

ul-SpecificParameters SEQUENCE {

priority Priority,

prioritisedBitRate PrioritisedBitRate,

bucketSizeDuration BucketSizeDuration,

logicalChannelGroup INTEGER (0..3)

} OPTIONAL

}

-- ASN1STOP

NOTE: All the ASN.1 start tags in the ASN.1 sections, used as examples in this annex to the specification, are deliberately distorted, in order not to include them when the ASN.1 description of the RRC PDU contents is extracted from the specification.

A reference to a specific type of information element should be made using the corresponding ASN.1 type identifier preceded by the acronym "IE", e.g., a reference to the IE *LogicalChannelConfig* in the example above.

References to a specific type of information element should only be used when those are generic, i.e., without regard to the particular context wherein the specific type of information element is used. If the reference is related to a particular context, e.g., an RRC PDU type (message) wherein the information element is used, the corresponding field identifier in that context should be used in the text reference.

A reference to a specific value of an ASN.1 field should be made using the corresponding ASN.1 value without using quotation marks around the ASN.1 value, e.g., 'if the *status* field is set to value *true*'.

A.3.2 High-level message structure

Within each logical channel type, the associated RRC PDU (message) types are alternatives within a CHOICE, as shown in the example below.

-- /example/ ASN1START

DL-DCCH-Message ::= SEQUENCE {

message DL-DCCH-MessageType

}

DL-DCCH-MessageType ::= CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE {

dlInformationTransfer DLInformationTransfer,

handoverFromEUTRAPreparationRequest HandoverFromEUTRAPreparationRequest,

mobilityFromEUTRACommand MobilityFromEUTRACommand,

rrcConnectionReconfiguration RRCConnectionReconfiguration,

rrcConnectionRelease RRCConnectionRelease,

securityModeCommand SecurityModeCommand,

ueCapabilityEnquiry UECapabilityEnquiry,

spare1 NULL

},

messageClassExtension SEQUENCE {}

}

-- ASN1STOP

A nested two-level CHOICE structure is used, where the alternative PDU types are alternatives within the inner level *c1* CHOICE.

Spare alternatives (i.e., *spare1* in this case) may be included within the *c1* CHOICE to facilitate future extension. The number of such spare alternatives should not extend the total number of alternatives beyond an integer-power-of-two number of alternatives (i.e., eight in this case).

Further extension of the number of alternative PDU types is facilitated using the *messageClassExtension* alternative in the outer level CHOICE.

A.3.3 Message definition

Each PDU (message) type is specified in an ASN.1 section similar to the one shown in the example below.

-- /example/ ASN1START

RRCConnectionReconfiguration ::= SEQUENCE {

rrc-TransactionIdentifier RRC-TransactionIdentifier,

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE{

rrcConnectionReconfiguration-r8 RRCConnectionReconfiguration-r8-IEs,

spare3 NULL, spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

RRCConnectionReconfiguration-r8-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Enter the IEs here.

...

}

-- ASN1STOP

Hooks for *critical* and *non-critical* extension should normally be included in the PDU type specification. How these hooks are used is further described in sub-clause A.4.

Critical extensions are characterised by a redefinition of the PDU contents and need to be governed by a mechanism for protocol version agreement between the encoder and the decoder of the PDU, such that the encoder is prevented from sending a critically extended version of the PDU type, which is not comprehended by the decoder.

Critical extension of a PDU type is facilitated by a two-level CHOICE structure, where the alternative PDU contents are alternatives within the inner level *c1* CHOICE. Spare alternatives (i.e., *spare3* down to *spare1* in this case) may be included within the *c1* CHOICE. The number of spare alternatives to be included in the original PDU specification should be decided case by case, based on the expected rate of critical extension in the future releases of the protocol.

Further critical extension, when the spare alternatives from the original specifications are used up, is facilitated using the *criticalExtensionsFuture* in the outer level CHOICE.

In PDU types where critical extension is not expected in the future releases of the protocol, the inner level *c1* CHOICE and the spare alternatives may be excluded, as shown in the example below.

-- /example/ ASN1START

RRCConnectionReconfigurationComplete ::= SEQUENCE {

rrc-TransactionIdentifier RRC-TransactionIdentifier,

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

rrcConnectionReconfigurationComplete-r8

RRCConnectionReconfigurationComplete-r8-IEs,

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

RRCConnectionReconfigurationComplete-r8-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Enter the fields here.

...

}

-- ASN1STOP

Non-critical extensions are characterised by the addition of new information to the original specification of the PDU type. If not comprehended, a non-critical extension may be skipped by the decoder, whilst the decoder is still able to complete the decoding of the comprehended parts of the PDU contents.

Non-critical extensions at locations other than the end of the message or other than at the end of a field contained in a BIT or OCTET STRING are facilitated by use of the ASN.1 extension marker "...". The original specification of a PDU type should normally include the extension marker at the end of the sequence of information elements contained.

Non-critical extensions at the end of the message or at the end of a field that is contained in a BIT or OCTET STRING may be facilitated by use of an empty sequence that is marked OPTIONAL e.g. as shown in the following example:

-- /example/ ASN1START

RRCMessage-r8-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

field1 InformationElement1,

field2 InformationElement2,

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

-- ASN1STOP

The ASN.1 section specifying the contents of a PDU type may be followed by a *field description* table where a further description of, e.g., the semantic properties of the fields may be included. The general format of this table is shown in the example below. The field description table is absent in case there are no fields for which further description needs to be provided e.g. because the PDU does not include any fields, or because an IE is defined for each field while there is nothing specific regarding the use of this IE that needs to be specified.

| *%PDU-TypeIdentifier%* field descriptions |
| --- |
| ***%field identifier%***  Field description. |
| ***%field identifier%***  Field description. |

The field description table has one column. The header row shall contain the ASN.1 type identifier of the PDU type.

The following rows are used to provide field descriptions. Each row shall include a first paragraph with a *field identifier* (in ***bold and italic*** font style) referring to the part of the PDU to which it applies. The following paragraphs at the same row may include (in regular font style), e.g., semantic description, references to other specifications and/or specification of value units, which are relevant for the particular part of the PDU.

The parts of the PDU contents that do not require a field description shall be omitted from the field description table.

A.3.4 Information elements

Each IE (information element) type is specified in an ASN.1 section similar to the one shown in the example below.

-- /example/ ASN1START

PRACH-ConfigSIB ::= SEQUENCE {

rootSequenceIndex INTEGER (0..1023),

prach-ConfigInfo PRACH-ConfigInfo

}

PRACH-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

rootSequenceIndex INTEGER (0..1023),

prach-ConfigInfo PRACH-ConfigInfo OPTIONAL -- Need N

}

PRACH-ConfigInfo ::= SEQUENCE {

prach-ConfigIndex ENUMERATED {ffs},

highSpeedFlag ENUMERATED {ffs},

zeroCorrelationZoneConfig ENUMERATED {ffs}

}

-- ASN1STOP

IEs should be introduced whenever there are multiple fields for which the same set of values apply. IEs may also be defined for other reasons e.g. to break down a ASN.1 definition in to smaller pieces.

A group of closely related IE type definitions, like the IEs *PRACH-ConfigSIB* and *PRACH-Config* in this example, are preferably placed together in a common ASN.1 section. The IE type identifiers should in this case have a common base, defined as the *generic type identifier*. It may be complemented by a suffix to distinguish the different variants. The "*PRACH-Config*" is the generic type identifier in this example, and the "*SIB*" suffix is added to distinguish the variant. The sub-clause heading and generic references to a group of closely related IEs defined in this way should use the generic type identifier.

The same principle should apply if a new version, or an extension version, of an existing IE is created for *critical* or *non-critical* extension of the protocol (see sub-clause A.4). The new version, or the extension version, of the IE is included in the same ASN.1 section defining the original. A suffix is added to the type identifier, using the naming conventions defined in sub-clause A.3.1.2, indicating the release or version of the where the new version, or extension version, was introduced.

Local IE type definitions, like the IE *PRACH-ConfigInfo* in the example above, may be included in the ASN.1 section and be referenced in the other IE types defined in the same ASN.1 section. The use of locally defined IE types should be encouraged, as a tool to break up large and complex IE type definitions. It can improve the readability of the code. There may also be a benefit for the software implementation of the protocol end-points, as these IE types are typically provided by the ASN.1 compiler as independent data elements, to be used in the software implementation.

An IE type defined in a local context, like the IE *PRACH-ConfigInfo*, should not be referenced directly from other ASN.1 sections in the RRC specification. An IE type which is referenced in more than one ASN.1 section should be defined in a separate sub-clause, with a separate heading and a separate ASN.1 section (possibly as one in a set of closely related IE types, like the IEs *PRACH-ConfigSIB* and *PRACH-Config* in the example above). Such IE types are also referred to as 'global IEs'.

NOTE: Referring to an IE type, that is defined as a local IE type in the context of another ASN.1 section, does not generate an ASN.1 compilation error. Nevertheless, using a locally defined IE type in that way makes the IE type definition difficult to find, as it would not be visible at an outline level of the specification. It should be avoided.

The ASN.1 section specifying the contents of one or more IE types, like in the example above, may be followed by a *field description* table, where a further description of, e.g., the semantic properties of the fields of the information elements may be included. This table may be absent, similar as indicated in sub-clause A.3.3 for the specification of the PDU type. The general format of the *field description* table is the same as shown in sub-clause A.3.3 for the specification of the PDU type.

A.3.5 Fields with optional presence

A field with optional presence may be declared with the keyword DEFAULT. It identifies a default value to be assumed, if the sender does not include a value for that field in the encoding:

-- /example/ ASN1START

PreambleInfo ::= SEQUENCE {

numberOfRA-Preambles INTEGER (1..64) DEFAULT 1,

...

}

-- ASN1STOP

Alternatively, a field with optional presence may be declared with the keyword OPTIONAL. It identifies a field for which a value can be omitted. The omission carries semantics, which is different from any normal value of the field:

-- /example/ ASN1START

PRACH-Config ::= SEQUENCE {

rootSequenceIndex INTEGER (0..1023),

prach-ConfigInfo PRACH-ConfigInfo OPTIONAL -- Need N

}

-- ASN1STOP

The semantics of an optionally present field, in the case it is omitted, should be indicated at the end of the paragraph including the keyword OPTIONAL, using a short comment text with a need code. The need code includes the keyword "Need", followed by one of the predefined semantics tags (S, M, N or R) defined in sub-clause 6.1. If the semantics tag S is used, the semantics of the absent field are further specified either in the field description table following the ASN.1 section, or in procedure text.

The addition of OPTIONAL keywords for capability groups is based on the following guideline. If there is more than one field in the lower level IE, then OPTIONAL keyword is added at the group level. If there is only one field in the lower level IE, OPTIONAL keyword is not added at the group level.

A.3.6 Fields with conditional presence

A field with conditional presence is declared with the keyword OPTIONAL. In addition, a short comment text shall be included at the end of the paragraph including the keyword OPTIONAL. The comment text includes the keyword "Cond", followed by a condition tag associated with the field ("UL" in this example):

-- /example/ ASN1START

LogicalChannelConfig ::= SEQUENCE {

ul-SpecificParameters SEQUENCE {

priority INTEGER (0),

...

} OPTIONAL -- Cond UL

}

-- ASN1STOP

When conditionally present fields are included in an ASN.1 section, the field description table after the ASN.1 section shall be followed by a *conditional presence* table. The conditional presence table specifies the conditions for including the fields with conditional presence in the particular ASN.1 section.

| **Conditional presence** | **Explanation** |
| --- | --- |
| UL | **Specification of the conditions for including the field associated with the condition tag = "UL". Semantics in case of optional presence under certain conditions may also be specified.** |

The conditional presence table has two columns. The first column (heading: "Conditional presence") contains the condition tag (in *italic* font style), which links the fields with a condition tag in the ASN.1 section to an entry in the table. The second column (heading: "Explanation") contains a text specification of the conditions and requirements for the presence of the field. The second column may also include semantics, in case of an optional presence of the field, under certain conditions i.e. using the same predefined tags as defined for optional fields in A.3.5.

Conditional presence should primarily be used when presence of a field depends on the presence and/or value of other fields within the same message. If the presence of a field depends on whether another feature/function has been configured, while this function can be configured independently e.g. by another message and/or at another point in time, the relation is best reflected by means of a statement in the field description table.

If the ASN.1 section does not include any fields with conditional presence, the conditional presence table shall not be included.

Whenever a field is only applicable in specific cases e.g. TDD, use of conditional presence should be considered.

A.3.7 Guidelines on use of lists with elements of SEQUENCE type

Where an information element has the form of a list (the SEQUENCE OF construct in ASN.1) with the type of the list elements being a SEQUENCE data type, an information element shall be defined for the list elements even if it would not otherwise be needed.

For example, a list of PLMN identities with reservation flags is defined as in the following example:

-- /example/ ASN1START

PLMN-IdentityInfoList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..6)) OF PLMN-IdentityInfo

PLMN-IdentityInfo ::= SEQUENCE {

plmn-Identity PLMN-Identity,

cellReservedForOperatorUse ENUMERATED {reserved, notReserved}

}

-- ASN1STOP

rather than as in the following (bad) example, which may cause generated code to contain types with unpredictable names:

-- /bad example/ ASN1START

PLMN-IdentityList ::= SEQUENCE (SIZE (1..6)) OF SEQUENCE {

plmn-Identity PLMN-Identity,

cellReservedForOperatorUse ENUMERATED {reserved, notReserved}

}

-- ASN1STOP

### A.3.8 Guidelines on use of parameterised SetupRelease type

The usage of the parameterised *SetupRelease* type is like a function call in programming languages where the element type parameter is passed as a parameter. The parameterised type only implies a textual change in abstract syntax where all references to the parameterised type are replaced by the compiler with the release/setup choice. Two examples of the usage are shown below;

-- /example/ ASN1START

RRCMessage-r15-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

field-r15 SetupRelease { IE-r15 } OPTIONAL, -- Need M

...

}

RRCMessage-r15-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

field-r15 SetupRelease { SEQUENCE {

field1-r15 IE1-r15,

field2-r15 IE2-r15 OPTIONAL -- Need N

}

} OPTIONAL, -- Need M

}

-- /example/ ASN1STOP

A.4 Extension of the PDU specifications

A.4.1 General principles to ensure compatibility

It is essential that extension of the protocol does not affect interoperability i.e. it is essential that implementations based on different versions of the RRC protocol are able to interoperate. In particular, this requirement applies for the following kind of protocol extensions:

- Introduction of new PDU types (i.e. these should not cause unexpected behaviour or damage).

- Introduction of additional fields in an extensible PDUs (i.e. it should be possible to ignore uncomprehended extensions without affecting the handling of the other parts of the message).

- Introduction of additional values of an extensible field of PDUs. If used, the behaviour upon reception of an uncomprehended value should be defined.

It should be noted that the PDU extension mechanism may depend on the logical channel used to transfer the message e.g. for some PDUs an implementation may be aware of the protocol version of the peer in which case selective ignoring of extensions may not be required.

The non-critical extension mechanism is the primary mechanism for introducing protocol extensions i.e. the critical extension mechanism is used merely when there is a need to introduce a 'clean' message version. Such a need appears when the last message version includes a large number of non-critical extensions, which results in issues like readability, overhead associated with the extension markers. The critical extension mechanism may also be considered when it is complicated to accommodate the extensions by means of non-critical extension mechanisms.

A.4.2 Critical extension of messages and fields

The mechanisms to critically extend a message are defined in A.3.3. There are both "outer branch" and "inner branch" mechanisms available. The "outer branch" consists of a CHOICE having the name *criticalExtensions*, with two values, *c1* and *criticalExtensionsFuture*. The *criticalExtensionsFuture* branch consists of an empty SEQUENCE, while the c1 branch contains the "inner branch" mechanism.

The "inner branch" structure is a CHOICE with values of the form "*MessageName-rX-IEs*" (e.g., "*RRCConnectionReconfiguration-r8-IEs*") or "*spareX*", with the spare values having type NULL. The "-rX-IEs" structures contain the *complete* structure of the message IEs for the appropriate release; i.e., the critical extension branch for the Rel-10 version of a message includes all Rel-8 and Rel-9 fields (that are not obviated in the later version), rather than containing only the additional Rel-10 fields.

The following guidelines may be used when deciding which mechanism to introduce for a particular message, i.e. only an 'outer branch', or an 'outer branch' in combination with an 'inner branch' including a certain number of spares:

- For certain messages, e.g. initial uplink messages, messages transmitted on a broadcast channel, critical extension may not be applicable.

- An outer branch may be sufficient for messages not including any fields.

- The number of spares within inner branch should reflect the likelihood that the message will be critically extended in future releases (since each release with a critical extension for the message consumes one of the spare values). The estimation of the critical extension likelyhood may be based on the number, size and changeability of the fields included in the message.

- In messages where an inner branch extension mechanism is available, all spare values of the inner branch should be used before any critical extensions are added using the outer branch.

The following example illustrates the use of the critical extension mechanism by showing the ASN.1 of the original and of a later release

-- /example/ ASN1START -- Original release

RRCMessage ::= SEQUENCE {

rrc-TransactionIdentifier RRC-TransactionIdentifier,

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE{

rrcMessage-r8 RRCMessage-r8-IEs,

spare3 NULL, spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

-- ASN1STOP

-- /example/ ASN1START -- Later release

RRCMessage ::= SEQUENCE {

rrc-TransactionIdentifier RRC-TransactionIdentifier,

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE{

rrcMessage-r8 RRCMessage-r8-IEs,

rrcMessage-r10 RRCMessage-r10-IEs,

rrcMessage-r11 RRCMessage-r11-IEs,

rrcMessage-r14 RRCMessage-r14-IEs

},

later CHOICE {

c2 CHOICE{

rrcMessage-r16 RRCMessage-r16-IEs,

spare7 NULL, spare6 NULL, spare5 NULL, spare4 NULL,

spare3 NULL, spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

}

-- ASN1STOP

It is important to note that critical extensions may also be used at the level of individual fields i.e. a field may be replaced by a critically extended version. When sending the extended version, the original version may also be included (e.g. original field is mandatory, EUTRAN is unaware if UE supports the extended version). In such cases, a UE supporting both versions may be required to ignore the original field. The following example illustrates the use of the critical extension mechanism by showing the ASN.1 of the original and of a later release

-- /example/ ASN1START -- Original release

RRCMessage ::= SEQUENCE {

rrc-TransactionIdentifier RRC-TransactionIdentifier,

criticalExtensions CHOICE {

c1 CHOICE{

rrcMessage-r8 RRCMessage-r8-IEs,

spare3 NULL, spare2 NULL, spare1 NULL

},

criticalExtensionsFuture SEQUENCE {}

}

}

RRCMessage-rN-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

field1-rN ENUMERATED {

value1, value2, value3, value4} OPTIONAL, -- Need N

field2-rN InformationElement2-rN OPTIONAL, -- Need N

nonCriticalExtension RRCConnectionReconfiguration-vMxy-IEs OPTIONAL

}

RRCConnectionReconfiguration-vMxy-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

field2-rM InformationElement2-rM OPTIONAL, -- Cond NoField2rN

nonCriticalExtension SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

-- ASN1STOP

| **Conditional presence** | **Explanation** |
| --- | --- |
| *NoField2rN* | The field is optionally present, need N, if *field2-rN* is absent. Otherwise the field is not present |

Finally, it is noted that a critical extension may be introduced in the same release as the one in which the original field was introduced e.g. to correct an essential ASN.1 error. In such cases a UE capability may be introduced, to assist the network in deciding whether or not to use the critically extension.

A.4.3 Non-critical extension of messages

A.4.3.1 General principles

The mechanisms to extend a message in a non-critical manner are defined in A.3.3. W.r.t. the use of extension markers, the following additional guidelines apply:

- When further non-critical extensions are added to a message that has been critically extended, the inclusion of these non-critical extensions in earlier critical branches of the message should be avoided when possible.

- The extension marker ("…") is the primary non-critical extension mechanism that is used but empty sequences may be used if length determinant is not required. Examples of cases where a length determinant is not required:

- at the end of a message,

- at the end of a structure contained in a BIT STRING or OCTET STRING

- When an extension marker is available, non-critical extensions are preferably placed at the location (e.g. the IE) where the concerned parameter belongs from a logical/ functional perspective (referred to as the '*default extension location*')

- It is desirable to aggregate extensions of the same release or version of the specification into a group, which should be placed at the lowest possible level.

- In specific cases it may be preferrable to place extensions elsewhere (referred to as the '*actual extension location*') e.g. when it is possible to aggregate several extensions in a group. In such a case, the group should be placed at the lowest suitable level in the message. <TBD: ref to seperate example>

- In case placement at the default extension location affects earlier critical branches of the message, locating the extension at a following higher level in the message should be considered.

- In case an extension is not placed at the defaultextension location, an IE should be defined. The IE's ASN.1 definition should be placed in the same ASN.1 section as the default extension location. In case there are intermediate levels in-between the actual and the defaultextension location, an IE may be defined for each level. Intermediate levels are primarily introduced for readability and overview. Hence intermediate levels need not allways be introduced e.g. they may not be needed when the default and the actual extension location are within the same ASN.1 section. <TBD: ref to seperate example>

A.4.3.2 Further guidelines

Further to the general principles defined in the previous section, the following additional guidelines apply regarding the use of extension markers:

- Extension markers within SEQUENCE

- Extension markers are primarily, but not exclusively, introduced at the higher nesting levels

- Extension markers are introduced for a SEQUENCE comprising several fields as well as for information elements whose extension would result in complex structures without it (e.g. re-introducing another list)

- Extension markers are introduced to make it possible to maintain important information structures e.g. parameters relevant for one particular RAT

- Extension markers are also used for size critical messages (i.e. messages on BCCH, BR-BCCH, PCCH and CCCH), although introduced somewhat more carefully

- The extension fields introduced (or frozen) in a specific version of the specification are grouped together using double brackets.

- Extension markers within ENUMERATED

- Spare values may be used until the number of values reaches the next power of 2, while the extension marker caters for extension beyond that limit, given that the use of spare values in a later Release is possible without any error cases

- A suffix of the form "vXYZ" is used for the identifier of each new value, e.g. "value-vXYZ".

- Extension markers within CHOICE:

- Extension markers are introduced when extension is foreseen and when comprehension is not required by the receiver i.e. behaviour is defined for the case where the receiver cannot comprehend the extended value (e.g. ignoring an optional CHOICE field). It should be noted that defining the behaviour of a receiver upon receiving a not comprehended choice value is not required if the sender is aware whether or not the receiver supports the extended value.

- A suffix of the form "vXYZ" is used for the identifier of each new choice value, e.g. "choice-vXYZ".

Non-critical extensions at the end of a message/ of a field contained in an OCTET or BIT STRING:

- When a nonCriticalExtension is actually used, a "Need" code should not be provided for the field, which always is a group including at least one extension and a field facilitating further possible extensions. For simplicity, it is recommended not to provide a "Need" code when the field is not actually used either.

Further, more general, guidelines:

- In case a need code is not provided for a group, a "Need" code is provided for all individual extension fields within the group i.e. including for fields that are not marked as OPTIONAL. The latter is to clarify the action upon absence of the whole group.

A.4.3.3 Typical example of evolution of IE with local extensions

The following example illustrates the use of the extension marker for a number of elementary cases (sequence, enumerated, choice). The example also illustrates how the IE may be revised in case the critical extension mechanism is used.

NOTE In case there is a need to support further extensions of release n while the ASN.1 of release (n+1) has been frozen, without requiring the release n receiver to support decoding of release (n+1) extensions, more advanced mechanisms are needed e.g. including multiple extension markers.

-- /example/ ASN1START

InformationElement1 ::= SEQUENCE {

field1 ENUMERATED {

value1, value2, value3, value4-v880,

..., value5-v960 },

field2 CHOICE {

field2a BOOLEAN,

field2b InformationElement2b,

...,

field2c-v960 InformationElement2c-r9

},

...,

[[ field3-r9 InformationElement3-r9 OPTIONAL -- Need R

]],

[[ field3-v9a0 InformationElement3-v9a0 OPTIONAL, -- Need R

field4-r9 InformationElement4 OPTIONAL -- Need R

]]

}

InformationElement1-r10 ::= SEQUENCE {

field1 ENUMERATED {

value1, value2, value3, value4-v880,

value5-v960, value6-v1170, spare2, spare1, ... },

field2 CHOICE {

field2a BOOLEAN,

field2b InformationElement2b,

field2c-v960 InformationElement2c-r9,

...,

field2d-v12b0 INTEGER (0..63)

},

field3-r9 InformationElement3-r10 OPTIONAL, -- Need R

field4-r9 InformationElement4 OPTIONAL, -- Need R

field5-r10 BOOLEAN,

field6-r10 InformationElement6-r10 OPTIONAL, -- Need R

...,

[[ field3-v1170 InformationElement3-v1170 OPTIONAL -- Need R

]]

}

-- ASN1STOP

Some remarks regarding the extensions of *InformationElement1* as shown in the above example:

– The *InformationElement1* is initially extended with a number of non-critical extensions. In release 10 however, a critical extension is introduced for the message using this IE. Consequently, a new version of the IE *InformationElement1* (i.e. *InformationElement1-r10*) is defined in which the earlier non-critical extensions are incorporated by means of a revision of the original field.

– The *value4-v880* is replacing a spare value defined in the original protocol version for *field1*. Likewise *value6-v1170* replaces *spare3* that was originally defined in the r10 version of *field1*

– Within the critically extended release 10 version of *InformationElement1*, the names of the original fields/IEs are not changed, unless there is a real need to distinguish them from other fields/IEs. E.g. the *field1* and *InformationElement4* were defined in the original protocol version (release 8) and hence not tagged. Moreover, the *field3-r9* is introduced in release 9 and not re-tagged; although, the *InformationElement3* is also critically extended and therefore tagged *InformationElement3-r10* in the release 10 version of InformationElement1.

A.4.3.4 Typical examples of non critical extension at the end of a message

The following example illustrates the use of non-critical extensions at the end of the message or at the end of a field that is contained in a BIT or OCTET STRING i.e. when an empty sequence is used.

-- /example/ ASN1START

RRCMessage-r8-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

field1 InformationElement1,

field2 InformationElement2,

field3 InformationElement3 OPTIONAL, -- Need N

nonCriticalExtension RRCMessage-v860-IEs OPTIONAL

}

RRCMessage-v860-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

field4-v860 InformationElement4 OPTIONAL, -- Need S

field5-v860 BOOLEAN OPTIONAL, -- Cond C54

nonCriticalExtension RRCMessage-v940-IEs OPTIONAL

}

RRCMessage-v940-IEs ::= SEQUENCE {

field6-v940 InformationElement6-r9 OPTIONAL, -- Need R

nonCriticalExtensions SEQUENCE {} OPTIONAL

}

-- ASN1STOP

Some remarks regarding the extensions shown in the above example:

– The *InformationElement4* is introduced in the original version of the protocol (release 8) and hence no suffix is used.

A.4.3.5 Examples of non-critical extensions not placed at the default extension location

The following example illustrates the use of non-critical extensions in case an extension is not placed at the defaultextension location.

#### *– ParentIE-WithEM*

The IE *ParentIE-WithEM* is an example of a high level IE including the extension marker (EM). The root encoding of this IE includes two lower level IEs *ChildIE1-WithoutEM* and *ChildIE2-WithoutEM* which not include the extension marker. Consequently, non-critical extensions of the Child-IEs have to be included at the level of the Parent-IE.

The example illustrates how the two extension IEs *ChildIE1-WithoutEM-vNx0* and *ChildIE2-WithoutEM-vNx0* (both in release N) are used to connect non-critical extensions with a default extension location in the lower level IEs to the actual extension location in this IE.

*ParentIE-WithEM* information element

-- /example/ ASN1START

ParentIE-WithEM ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Root encoding, including:

childIE1-WithoutEM ChildIE1-WithoutEM OPTIONAL, -- Need N

childIE2-WithoutEM ChildIE2-WithoutEM OPTIONAL, -- Need N

...,

[[ childIE1-WithoutEM-vNx0 ChildIE1-WithoutEM-vNx0 OPTIONAL, -- Need N

childIE2-WithoutEM-vNx0 ChildIE2-WithoutEM-vNx0 OPTIONAL -- Need N

]]

}

-- ASN1STOP

Some remarks regarding the extensions shown in the above example:

– The fields *childIEx-WithoutEM-vNx0* may not really need to be optional (depends on what is defined at the next lower level).

– In general, especially when there are several nesting levels, fields should be marked as optional only when there is a clear reason.

#### *– ChildIE1-WithoutEM*

The IE *ChildIE1-WithoutEM* is an example of a lower level IE, used to control certain radio configurations including a configurable feature which can be setup or released using the local IE *ChIE1-ConfigurableFeature*. The example illustrates how the new field *chIE1-NewField* is added in release N to the configuration of the configurable feature. The example is based on the following assumptions:

– when initially configuring as well as when modifying the new field, the original fields of the configurable feature have to be provided also i.e. as if the extended ones were present within the setup branch of this feature.

– when the configurable feature is released, the new field should be released also.

– when omitting the original fields of the configurable feature the UE continues using the existing values (which is used to optimise the signalling for features that typically continue unchanged upon handover).

– when omitting the new field of the configurable feature the UE releases the existing values and discontinues the associated functionality (which may be used to support release of unsupported functionality upon handover to an eNB supporting an earlier protocol version).

The above assumptions, which affect the use of conditions and need codes, may not always apply. Hence, the example should not be re-used blindly.

*ChildIE1-WithoutEM* information elements

-- /example/ ASN1START

ChildIE1-WithoutEM ::= SEQUENCE {

-- Root encoding, including:

chIE1-ConfigurableFeature ChIE1-ConfigurableFeature OPTIONAL -- Need N

}

ChildIE1-WithoutEM-vNx0 ::= SEQUENCE {

chIE1-ConfigurableFeature-vNx0 ChIE1-ConfigurableFeature-vNx0 OPTIONAL -- Cond ConfigF

}

ChIE1-ConfigurableFeature ::= CHOICE {

release NULL,

setup SEQUENCE {

-- Root encoding

}

}

ChIE1-ConfigurableFeature-vNx0 ::= SEQUENCE {

chIE1-NewField-rN INTEGER (0..31)

}

-- ASN1STOP

| **Conditional presence** | **Explanation** |
| --- | --- |
| *ConfigF* | The field is optional present, need R, in case of *chIE1-ConfigurableFeature* is included and set to "setup"; otherwise the field is not present and the UE shall delete any existing value for this field. |

#### *– ChildIE2-WithoutEM*

The IE *ChildIE2-WithoutEM* is an example of a lower level IE, typically used to control certain radio configurations. The example illustrates how the new field *chIE1-NewField* is added in release N to the configuration of the configurable feature.

*ChildIE2-WithoutEM* information element

-- /example/ ASN1START

ChildIE2-WithoutEM ::= CHOICE {

release NULL,

setup SEQUENCE {

-- Root encoding

}

}

ChildIE2-WithoutEM-vNx0 ::= SEQUENCE {

chIE2-NewField-rN INTEGER (0..31) OPTIONAL -- Cond ConfigF

}

-- ASN1STOP

| **Conditional presence** | **Explanation** |
| --- | --- |
| *ConfigF* | The field is optional present, need R, in case of *chIE2-ConfigurableFeature* is included and set to "setup"; otherwise the field is not present and the UE shall delete any existing value for this field. |

A.5 Guidelines regarding inclusion of transaction identifiers in RRC messages

The following rules provide guidance on which messages should include a Transaction identifier

1: DL messages on CCCH that move UE to RRC-Idle should not include the RRC transaction identifier.

2: All network initiated DL messages by default should include the RRC transaction identifier.

3: All UL messages that are direct response to a DL message with an RRC Transaction identifier should include the RRC Transaction identifier.

4: All UL messages that require a direct DL response message should include an RRC transaction identifier.

5: All UL messages that are not in response to a DL message nor require a corresponding response from the network should not include the RRC Transaction identifier.

## A.6 Guidelines regarding use of need codes

The following rule provides guidance for determining need codes for optional downlink fields:

- if the field needs to be stored by the UE (i.e. maintained) when absent:

- use Need M (=Maintain)

- else, if the field needs to be released by the UE when absent:

- use Need R (=Release)

- else, if UE shall take no action when the field is absent (i.e. UE does not even need to maintain any existing value of the field):

- use Need N (=None)

- else (UE behaviour upon absence doesn’t fit any of the above conditions):

- use Need S (=Specified)

- specify the UE behaviour upon absence of the field in the procedural text or in the field description table.

Annex <X> (informative):  
Change history

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Change history | | | | | | | |
| **Date** | **Meeting** | **TDoc** | **CR** | **Rev** | **Cat** | **Subject/Comment** | **New version** |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 5.8.4 | Correct use of need codes |
| A.3, A.4 | Correct use of need codes |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |